

10185

UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT  
EASTERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK

-----X  
UNITED STATES OF AMERICA, : 15-CR-00637 (KAM)  
:   
Plaintiff, :   
: United States Courthouse  
-against- : Brooklyn, New York  
:   
EVAN GREEBEL, :   
: Wednesday, December 20, 2017  
Defendant. : 9:00 a.m.  
-----X

TRANSCRIPT OF CRIMINAL CAUSE FOR JURY TRIAL  
BEFORE THE HONORABLE KIYO A. MATSUMOTO  
UNITED STATES DISTRICT JUDGE  
BEFORE A JURY

A P P E A R A N C E S:

For the Government: BRIDGET ROHDE, ESQ.  
Acting United States Attorney  
Eastern District of New York  
271 Cadman Plaza East  
Brooklyn, New York 11201  
BY: ALEXIS ELEIS SMITH, ESQ.  
DAVID PITLUCK, ESQ.  
DAVID KESSLER, ESQ.  
Assistant United States Attorney

For the Defendant: GIBSON DUNN & CRUTCHER  
200 Park Avenue, 48th Floor  
New York, New York 10166  
BY: REED BRODSKY, ESQ.  
JOSHUA EVAN DUBIN, ESQ.  
MYLAN LEE DENERSTEIN, ESQ.  
WINSTON Y. CHAN, ESQ.

Court Reporter: DAVID R. ROY, RPR  
225 Cadman Plaza East  
Brooklyn, New York 11201  
drroyofcr@gmail.com

Proceedings recorded by Stenographic machine shorthand,  
transcript produced by Computer-Assisted Transcription.

## Proceedings

10186

1 (In open court; outside the presence of the jury.)

2 THE COURT: Good morning. The jurors are all here.  
3 Have a seat. We received a submission last evening from  
4 Mr. Dubin at 10:00 o'clock, a little after 10:00 o'clock,  
5 which I believe reflects either a deliberate or unintentional  
6 misunderstanding of my ruling certainly, the rulings reflected  
7 in the letter mischaracterize what I ruled. And I would like  
8 to clarify on the record in case the defense team still  
9 doesn't understand what has been litigated many times, and  
10 raised before this court many times, and ruled upon many  
11 times. Is that the defense is free to argue that there is  
12 insufficient evidence and reasonable doubt, or abundant doubt  
13 as Mr. Brodsky said, based upon what it believes are failures  
14 in the investigative techniques.

15 What we talked about at length yesterday was the  
16 timing. The timing of when the Government took steps A, B or  
17 C with regard to interviewing witnesses or retrieving  
18 documents. The timing is not relevant to the jury's  
19 determination.

20 What is relevant to the jury's determination, as  
21 counsel here well know, is the evidence before the court.  
22 What the jury may consider is the evidence that has been  
23 presented at this trial.

24 By arguing that the Government's timing of certain  
25 investigative steps was incorrect and shows a motive to push

1 ahead with an investigation regardless of what the evidence  
2 shows, is an argument that I don't think is supported by the  
3 law. It's not been articulated by the defense.

4           So for example, is the defense arguing that had the  
5 Government interviewed a witness earlier than it did, would  
6 that witness's statement have persuaded the Government not to  
7 proceed with its investigation? Those witnesses, as stated by  
8 Mr. Dubin, testified here in court. Their credibility and the  
9 weight of their evidence will be evaluated by the jury. And  
10 by suggesting or arguing to the jury that had the Government  
11 talked to these witnesses earlier the Government would have  
12 taken different steps, is not really, not fully explained or  
13 flushed out.

14           I don't believe the defense has made a reasoned  
15 argument, unless they are arguing that the case never should  
16 have been brought in the first place. Which then puts the  
17 Government's prosecutorial decisions on trial, which is not,  
18 as you know, appropriate under the Second Circuit case law.

19           You may argue, as I said numerous times, that the  
20 Government's investigative techniques resulted in an  
21 insufficiency of the evidence, or that there is reasonable  
22 doubt based on evidence that the Government didn't obtain.  
23 That is completely acceptable and that has been clear from day  
24 one.

25           So if somebody on the defense team wants to explain

## Proceedings

10188

1 to me what they think what is unclear to them, or what they  
2 think they are not permitted to do, I'll straighten it out for  
3 the umpteenth time, but I don't agree with the  
4 mischaracterization of my rulings as reflected in this most  
5 recent letter, document number 499 in the docket.

6 Since Mr. Dubin wrote the letter, may I ask to hear  
7 from him or anyone else?

8 MR. DUBIN: Certainly, your Honor, there was no  
9 deliberate attempt to mischaracterize.

10 THE COURT: I said deliberate or unintentional. I'm  
11 not ascribing any motive to you. I'm surprised there is a  
12 lack of understanding of parameters. What we focused on  
13 yesterday, for almost 45 minutes, what the timing of certain  
14 steps the Government took. And I said, well, what would have  
15 been different? You said, it was exactly what the same  
16 witnesses that were interviewed a week before the trial or a  
17 year before the trial were here testifying. And I didn't get  
18 a clear articulation about what that timing issue would have  
19 reflected.

20 MR. DUBIN: Your Honor, it wouldn't be the first  
21 time I have been confused about something. I freely admit  
22 that. I am struggling, I freely concede that I'm struggling  
23 with how you do the former without doing the latter. That is,  
24 how do you argue that there were inadequacies in the  
25 investigative techniques without arguing that one of them was

## Proceedings

10189

1 the timing of when they spoke to witnesses. That, I guess, is  
2 what I'm struggling with.

3 THE COURT: It's the relevance of it. Articulate  
4 that for me -- I'm struggling. I don't understand how the  
5 timing of when they spoke to a witness could be relevant. The  
6 way it would be relevant would be if that witness was an eye  
7 witness to an incident and had the Government talked to the  
8 witness earlier they might have learned that the witness would  
9 have said the defendant didn't have the gun. That's a  
10 completely different factual scenario than what you're  
11 describing.

12 MR. DUBIN: Here is what I can say to clear up our  
13 argument -- I'm being mindful of the fact that we're about to  
14 start summation I don't want to give too much of it away.

15 Our argument about why the investigation was  
16 inadequate is that you cannot have a full picture without  
17 speaking to, who we feel, were critical witnesses, critical  
18 witnesses. So that goes right to the timing. They didn't  
19 speak to them. So how do I make that argument without, there  
20 has to be a tie to timing.

21 Because when they are investigating, and you're  
22 talking about their investigative techniques, one of the  
23 techniques that law enforcement uses is determining whether or  
24 not they should talk to certain witnesses. For whatever  
25 reasons that they put forth to the jury, Special Agent

## Proceedings

10190

1 Delzotto testified about them, and they'll argue I'm sure  
2 during summation why what he said were sound reasons, how is  
3 it that we can't say that, okay, but in our estimation our  
4 criticism of the investigative technique was that they didn't  
5 interview critical witnesses. They didn't interview them.

6 THE COURT: The next step is, what would those  
7 critical witnesses have said. They were here at trial. They  
8 were testifying. They went through cross-examination and  
9 direct examination.

10 MR. DUBIN: Right.

11 THE COURT: So what relevance could the timing be?  
12 The jury heard their testimony. They were fully cross  
13 examined. They are going to evaluate the weight and  
14 credibility; and whether the witness said the same thing a  
15 year before trial or the day before trial is really  
16 irrelevant. What matters is what the witness said.

17 MR. DUBIN: To us it's really relevant. Because  
18 they would have said that then. There were witnesses for the  
19 Government that testified that these e-mails that the  
20 Government says are smoking gun, evidence of proof, or strong  
21 evidence of proof of Mr. Greebel's guilt, can be read and are  
22 open to interpretation. Why not get the interpretation of  
23 some of the people that actually wrote them?

24 THE COURT: The jury is going to decide those  
25 issues, Mr. Dubin.

## Proceedings

10191

1 MR. DUBIN: I understand. That's our criticism of  
2 their investigative technique. That at the time they are  
3 investigating they didn't interview these people and say is  
4 there another explanation for this. How can I argue that  
5 without -- I have to say they didn't interview them, they  
6 weren't first interviewed until this past summer.

7 THE COURT: You can argue based on the evidence  
8 before the jury where a witness has testified and explained  
9 his or her e-mail. You can argue that here is an explanation  
10 based on the credible testimony of this witness explaining his  
11 or her e-mail that there is reasonable doubt or it's  
12 insufficient. And timing is irrelevant.

13 Unless you're suggesting that the witness would have  
14 changed his or her testimony, or that testimony or evidence is  
15 lost because of the timing.

16 MR. DUBIN: I'm going to have to do it very  
17 carefully. And then after doing that, refer to the fact that  
18 there is testimony in the case that they said that they were  
19 not interviewed until the summer of this year.

20 THE COURT: You can emphasize the timing.

21 MR. DUBIN: Okay.

22 THE COURT: I think that what is, what you're  
23 missing or what I'm just not understanding is how the timing  
24 of the same witnesses who testified here in court, how the  
25 timing of the Government's interview or contact with that

## Proceedings

10192

1 witness affects the jury's deliberations of the weight and  
2 credibility of the evidence.

3 I think the cases that you cite Zapata, there the  
4 Court gave the specific instruction, "That no duty to use  
5 particular techniques included the following: Your  
6 disapproval of the techniques or the fact that particular  
7 techniques were not used is not an issue to enter into your  
8 deliberations. Your concern is to determine whether or not  
9 based on your evaluation of the evidence before you, the guilt  
10 of the defendant you are considering has been proved beyond a  
11 reasonable doubt."

12 As in Zapata, I'm permitting you to argue that the  
13 jury should draw certain inferences from the Government's  
14 failure to use specific investigative techniques, which still  
15 have not yet been identified.

16 MR. DUBIN: Again --

17 THE COURT: It's about timing but the evidence is  
18 the same whether or not it was elicited or whether or not the  
19 Government even interviewed the witness, the witnesses were  
20 called here.

21 MR. DUBIN: I agree.

22 THE COURT: They testified. That's what the jury is  
23 going to --

24 MR. DUBIN: Your Honor, I don't want to keep -- you  
25 and I both conceded we were going in circles last night and I



## Proceedings

10193

1 don't want to keep doing it. I don't know a better way to  
2 articulate my point, I don't.

3 THE COURT: Is there a specific claim that should  
4 have been used, blood sample or DNA?

5 MR. DUBIN: There can be no dispute that an  
6 investigative technique what falls under that umbrella are  
7 what witnesses you decide to interview; that is an  
8 investigative technique, absolutely. I have done wrongful  
9 incarceration cases with the Innocence Project. I work with  
10 police practice experts, former FBI agents, not a single one  
11 of them would ever say to you that who we interview or decide  
12 not to interview is not an investigative technique, it clearly  
13 is. It clearly is. It makes no difference if you're testing  
14 somebody's blood and you're looking at DNA swabs, cheek swab,  
15 or if you're deciding to talk to a particular witness, those  
16 are all investigative techniques just different investigative  
17 techniques.

18 THE COURT: What is your argument? That had the  
19 Government interviewed a witness before Mr. Greebel's arrest  
20 as opposed to after Mr. Greebel's arrest the evidence, the  
21 statements from that witness would have been different?  
22 Explain that, how would that --

23 MR. DUBIN: That's for the jury to decide one way or  
24 another. We're certainly permitted to argue.

25 THE COURT: You're asking the jury to speculate or

## Proceedings

10194

1 suggesting to the jury that this witness would have changed  
2 their story had they been interviewed earlier.

3 MR. DUBIN: Just to the contrary.

4 THE COURT: What is important to the witness -- what  
5 is important to the jury's decision is observing the witness's  
6 demeanor, listening to what he or she says on direct and  
7 cross, and weighing that evidence deciding whether it's  
8 credible, and deciding whether those facts are sufficient to  
9 meet the Government's proof beyond a reasonable doubt, or  
10 whether that testimony raises doubt. But it's just not  
11 relevant about whether that witness was interviewed at all,  
12 whether that witness was interviewed before the arrest or  
13 after the arrest.

14 MR. DUBIN: Your Honor, I think maybe, I just, I  
15 think I just identified where we're passing each other. I'm  
16 not articulating clearly enough.

17 I am not going to argue that what they would have  
18 said would have been different. I'm going to argue directly  
19 the opposite. That their testimony is consistent, there is no  
20 reason to believe it would have been anything other than what  
21 they said here. How is that not relevant? So in other  
22 words -- that is my argument.

23 THE COURT: The inference you're asking the jury to  
24 draw is that the Government was motivated by some ill motive.

25 MR. DUBIN: No, I'm not.

## Proceedings

10195

1 THE COURT: To push forward with the investigation,  
2 the prosecution, regardless of what that witness would have  
3 said.

4 MR. DUBIN: No, that's not what I'm arguing. What  
5 I'm arguing, let me say it again very, very clearly, as  
6 clearly as I know how. I am not saying that they had an ill  
7 motive. As I've said before, I have deep respect for law  
8 enforcement, but sometimes they get it wrong. And one of ways  
9 in which they get it wrong -- unfortunately they get it wrong  
10 sometimes and innocent people sometimes get convicted because  
11 they get it wrong -- one of the ways in which he they got it  
12 wrong here was that they did an incomplete investigation, in  
13 our opinion. One of the investigative techniques that we will  
14 clearly seek to criticize is that they only spoke to who they  
15 thought was appropriate to speak to. And we feel we should be  
16 permitted to argue that they should have spoke to other people  
17 to get the full story. That's clearly a investigative  
18 technique.

19 THE COURT: I want to go on the record that Zapata  
20 has nothing whatsoever to do with the argument that you are  
21 making. Zapata involved the Government's failure to use  
22 certain investigative techniques, handwriting and fingerprint  
23 analysis as items seized as evidence. That was completely  
24 different than whether or not the Government interviewed a  
25 given witness on a given day. Those witnesses were here.

Proceedings

10196

1 That is just completely distinguishable.

2 MR. DUBIN: I think that's where we have a  
3 difference of opinion. I've stated my position for the  
4 record.

5 THE COURT: You're allowed to argue, I've never  
6 ruled that you could not argue that the Government's  
7 investigative techniques failed to yield proof beyond a  
8 reasonable doubt or sufficient evidence to convict  
9 Mr. Greebel. And you're also welcome to argue that the  
10 Government's investigative techniques resulted in other  
11 evidence that you presented, the defense presented, that  
12 raises abundant reasonable doubt. You're not being precluded  
13 from any of that.

14 MR. DUBIN: I understand, your Honor.

15 THE COURT: The whole timing about --

16 MR. DUBIN: The thing where I'm having a hard time  
17 is in between your two statements, is that the failure to  
18 yield evidence that we think was critical is directly related  
19 to their investigative technique of deciding not to talk to  
20 certain critical witnesses. That's where we have a  
21 difference.

22 THE COURT: Ultimately the jury will decide what  
23 weight to give that evidence. What probative value that  
24 evidence has, regardless of when it came or how it came or who  
25 gave it, who presented it, the jury could convict or acquit

## Proceedings

10197

1 based only on one party's presentation of the evidence. I  
2 just want to be clear.

3 MR. DUBIN: I think at least identified at a minimum  
4 where we respectfully disagree with the Court's ruling  
5 insomuch as us being able to affirmatively say the reason why  
6 they couldn't come up with sufficient evidence is because they  
7 didn't speak to critical witnesses.

8 THE COURT: I'm just wondering if you're going to  
9 identify who those critical witnesses are, because --

10 MR. DUBIN: We will.

11 THE COURT: -- because as you know, there is an  
12 instruction that these witnesses, no one has a burden,  
13 especially the defendant, to present any evidence whatsoever,  
14 the Government has no obligation to present witness testimony  
15 or evidence, it's entitled to try its case. Old Chief makes  
16 it very clear and that's as high an authority for that notion  
17 as I can imagine.

18 MR. DUBIN: I think what Zapata says, our reading of  
19 Zapata, the reason why I am positing to the Court that we're  
20 permitted to make this argument, is the exact reason why the  
21 Court then properly, as your Honor is going to do, will  
22 instruct the jury that the Government doesn't have to employ  
23 any particular investigative technique and the Government is  
24 not on trial. There is no reason for that instruction if I  
25 wasn't making the arguments.

## Proceedings

10198

1 THE COURT: Zapata was specifically presented with a  
2 defense argument that substantive specific evidence, like  
3 fingerprints and handwriting analyses, were lacking, the  
4 Government just ignored that. You have not said that the  
5 Government, that certain witnesses were not here testifying  
6 before the jury.

7 MR. DUBIN: Right. I think, just the difference --

8 THE COURT: What you said is because of the timing  
9 somehow the jury should infer some ill motive on the part of  
10 the agents or the Government and not interviewing them. The  
11 agent explained during his, I believe during his cross, the  
12 reasons why he didn't interview Mr. Greebel and certain  
13 members of his law firm. And whether the jury thinks that's a  
14 good reason or not, that's up to them. But it doesn't, and I  
15 guess it just doesn't bear on or limit your ability to make  
16 arguments.

17 MR. DUBIN: The only difference of opinion,  
18 respectfully, that we're having, is whether or not speaking to  
19 certain witnesses an investigative technique or not. We feel  
20 it is.

21 THE COURT: Of course it is, interviewing witnesses.  
22 But the Government has discretion and the agent's exercise  
23 their discretion in deciding who to speak to. When you probed  
24 Agent Delzotto he gave you reasons why he chose not to speak  
25 to witnesses. You can't represent to me as a defense lawyer,

## Proceedings

10199

1 because I know of no case, where an agent's decision not to  
2 interview a subject or target of their investigation was  
3 somehow called into question. That somehow showed that the  
4 agent's discretion was abused, that his investigatory or her  
5 investigatory techniques were amounted to an abuse of  
6 discretion that they didn't do something that the defense  
7 thinks the agent should have done.

8 MR. DUBIN: Never, not going to say that it was the  
9 result of ill will, not going to say that it was the result of  
10 a deliberate attempt to frame Mr. Greebel or to get him  
11 somehow.

12 What we are going to say is that that was a result  
13 of an assumption, right, that they had a hypothesis, that they  
14 had a theory of how this happened and what happened. They  
15 went in and they investigated it the way they wanted to. He  
16 had the authority to do that. They have the discretion to do  
17 that. We have the discretion, and I think Zapata clearly  
18 stands for the proposition, to call into question how they  
19 went about it.

20 THE COURT: You do; and I never said you couldn't.  
21 I think the logical extension of your argument is how the  
22 Government, had the Government interviewed witness A, B, C on  
23 days 1, 2, 3, rather than on the days they did, the Government  
24 would not have pursued their prosecution.

25 MR. DUBIN: That's for the jury to decide whether

## Proceedings

10200

1 they would have or not.

2 THE COURT: That's the impropriety, the improper  
3 argument, to say that the Government somehow should not be  
4 pursuing a prosecution or doing this in fact because one  
5 witness would have said something different or one witness's  
6 testimony on the stand before the jury would have been  
7 different or would have made a difference in the Government's  
8 view.

9 MR. PITLUCK: Judge, it's a very narrow issue. The  
10 Court ruled on it. We argued 45 minutes yesterday and 20  
11 minutes today. The timing when the Government interviewed  
12 witnesses, who testified here in court, that were in  
13 interviewed by the Government, the timing is irrelevant under  
14 case law. Your Honor has said that ten different times. And  
15 what I'm hearing is regardless of the ruling, they want to  
16 argue that.

17 That's the only issue, Judge. The timing of when we  
18 spoke to them is not a relevant investigative technique for  
19 the jury to consider under Second Circuit law. Your Honor has  
20 held that. We would like to establish those ground rules and  
21 move on with summations. We argued this for an hour.

22 (Continued following page.)

23

24

25



## Proceedings

10201

1 THE COURT: Well, I just felt that the letter  
2 either, as I said, unintentionally or deliberately just  
3 twisted my ruling. You are free to argue that the  
4 investigative techniques resulted in insufficient evidence to  
5 convict Mr. Greebel or raised reasonable doubt or whatever  
6 else. The investigative techniques were -- you can make  
7 arguments based on the evidence. You're not being precluded  
8 from doing that. And to say that that's what I ruled is  
9 incorrect.

10 MR. DUBIN: Here's the problem.

11 THE COURT: The timing --

12 MR. DUBIN: Your Honor, this is not a case that  
13 involves DNA or fingerprints or a lie detector test. All  
14 right, so I think this that --

15 THE COURT: The *Zapata* case does, as I'm allowing  
16 you to do, to argue that the jury should draw certain  
17 inferences from the government's failure to use certain  
18 techniques, but there the distinction was fingerprint and  
19 handwriting analysis.

20 And in the *Bloom* case, which you also cited, another  
21 highly distinguishable case. There the law enforcement  
22 witness had interviewed the kingpin in the drug organization  
23 in which the defendant was charged.

24 The officer on cross-examination testified about the  
25 post-arrest statement of the kingpin that he had sold drugs to

1 the defendant.

2 And I believe that the defense elicited this  
3 testimony to show that the investigating officers  
4 interpretation of certain intercepted wire, you know, phone  
5 calls was influenced by the kingpin's statement about his  
6 relationship with the defendant.

7 Well, when somebody's doing a law enforcement  
8 investigation over a period of years, yes, they interview many  
9 people and certain witnesses may have investigators  
10 investigating agents find more credibility, more weight, more  
11 influence on the agent's in the case. But the agent's view of  
12 the case is not on trial. What's on trial is the evidence and  
13 whether it's sufficient.

14 MR. DUBIN: Understood, Your Honor, and again I  
15 just -- I think that there's no limit, there's no box in which  
16 here are the only investigative techniques that there are in  
17 the world. There are in cases that involve DNA and  
18 fingerprints. There are those type of investigative  
19 techniques that will be germane to that investigation.

20 Here it just doesn't apply, and my -- respectfully  
21 and then I'll sit, we think that in a case that is all about  
22 emails, okay, that the critical investigative technique, and  
23 it's about interpretation of emails. We think that as  
24 critical as it is to test DNA in a violent crime case that it  
25 is just as critical in a case that is a white color case

Proceedings

10203

1 involving emails to speak to the witnesses who can interpret  
2 it.

3 And the final thing I'll say --

4 THE COURT: So let's assume that had those witnesses  
5 who testified here been spoken to --

6 MR. DUBIN: Yes, consistent with their testimony  
7 here, right.

8 THE COURT: -- how would that testimony in your view  
9 have affected the government's prosecutorial decisions?

10 MR. DUBIN: That's for the government -- I mean  
11 that's for the jury to decide.

12 THE COURT: It is not for the jury to decide. What  
13 weight that has to do -- what the jury's to decide is the  
14 weight, present value and credibility of the evidence.

15 MR. DUBIN: We think that the relevancy of that and  
16 how the jury would evaluate that goes directly to the  
17 inadequacy of the investigation.

18 That is our position. I respect and understand Your  
19 Honor's ruling. It puts us in a odd position.

20 THE COURT: You said that last night and then I get  
21 a 10:00 letter saying that I don't understand.

22 I thought we had made it as clear as we can. We've  
23 argued this many times. I've made numerous rulings. I've  
24 tried the best I can to be clear. You're not being prohibited  
25 from arguing that the investigative techniques resulted in,

Proceedings

10204

1 you know, a lack of sufficient evidence to convict.

2 MR. DUBIN: The only problem that we have, Your  
3 Honor, is that Mr. Brodsky stood up ten weeks ago in opening  
4 and said there was a rush to judgment here --

5 THE COURT: Yes.

6 MR. DUBIN: -- and that Evan was swept up in this  
7 effort get Martin Shkreli. And now I feel like we can't refer  
8 to that.

9 There was no objection to that at all and now I  
10 can't say "rush to judgment" in the summation?

11 THE COURT: No, you're not being prevented from  
12 saying "rush to judgment," you can do that in the context of  
13 the insufficiency of the evidence and --

14 MR. PITLUCK: Judge, I just want to be clear. The  
15 Court's ruling on this is clear and we're being accused of not  
16 objecting to something in opening that was improper and ruled  
17 upon in a motion in limine.

18 Now interrupting a summation is something that we  
19 are going to do because we want the Court's clear ruling  
20 articulated that the timing of when witnesses whose testified  
21 in court was interviewed is improper and not a proper  
22 criticism of the government's technique. I think that's  
23 clear. And we just want to make sure it's clear for the  
24 record because obviously we'll object, but I don't think this  
25 should come up. This is what the Court has said and it's and

## Proceedings

10205

1 skirted around and the Court's ruling is being kind of  
2 misinterpreted. We want to make sure that this is crystal  
3 clear because objecting during summation is something we don't  
4 want to do, and once it's out, it's out.

5 MR. DUBIN: I'm agreeing with Mr. Pitluck that I  
6 don't want to draw an objection during the summation but, for  
7 instance, Mr. Rosensaft testified that he was not interviewed.  
8 It was his testimony that the first time he was interviewed by  
9 law enforcement was in the summer of this year. I'm going to  
10 refer to his testimony. I have to. It's in the record. Why  
11 can't -- I mean I should be able to refer to his testimony.

12 MR. PITLUCK: Judge, we went through this last  
13 night. Referring to testimony that's in the record, just  
14 because it's in the record doesn't mean it can be marshaled in  
15 a specific way. We are very clearly restricted from arguing  
16 certain evidence on certain points that have come up  
17 throughout the trial.

18 But just because he testified he was interviewed in  
19 the summer, he was interviewed, and his testimony here today  
20 is relevant, not when it came out. Because as the Court has  
21 repeatedly pointed out, it's asking the jury to draw improper  
22 inferences is precluded. I don't want to keep going back and  
23 forth over this. We're having literally the same argument  
24 over and over and over.

25 MR. DUBIN: It's my understanding last night that

Proceedings

10206

1 the Court ruled that I can refer to this testimony.

2 THE COURT: I've made it as clear as I can.

3 MR. PITLUCK: Judge, if he refers to the timing of  
4 the testimony, there is really no proper basis to do so other  
5 than to imply that he should have been interviewed earlier.

6 THE COURT: Well, what is the relevance of when  
7 particular witnesses were interviewed --

8 MR. DUBIN: I can't --

9 THE COURT: -- that they would not have brought the  
10 prosecution?

11 MR. DUBIN: No, that their investigative techniques  
12 were inadequate and incomplete.

13 MR. PITLUCK: That's the same argument we've been  
14 making, Judge. You just said that's why we're going to  
15 marshal his testimony.

16 MR. DUBIN: So now I'm being told that I can't refer  
17 to testimony that's in this record. I certainly think that I  
18 have the right to do that.

19 MR. PITLUCK: Not for an irrelevant purpose that  
20 runs counter to the law, Judge.

21 MR. DUBIN: It's in the record as evidence.

22 MR. PITLUCK: There's a lot of things in the record  
23 in evidence that we can't argue.

24 Judge, they're trying for a jury nullification  
25 verdict what is clearly irrelevant, which is the timing of

## Proceedings

10207

1 when somebody spoke.

2 MR. DUBIN: We're trying for a verdict based on the  
3 evidence. And that's in the evidence.

4 THE COURT: But the relevant evidence is not when  
5 the government spoke to a witness. That is not relevant and  
6 you cited no case that supports that view.

7 MR. DUBIN: I think we have.

8 THE COURT: What is relevant is the weight, whether  
9 there is sufficient evidence or reasonable doubt or a lack of  
10 credible evidence.

11 You know, you have not cited a case. We've looked  
12 for those cases because you didn't cite them and I don't  
13 believe *Zapato* or *Bloom* stands for that proposition either  
14 with regard to the timing, especially when these witnesses  
15 were here in court. It's up to the jury to evaluate the  
16 substance of that testimony.

17 MR. DUBIN: So is it Your Honor's ruling, just so I  
18 don't draw an objection, if you're precluding it, I won't  
19 raise it, that I cannot refer to Mr. Rosensaft's testimony  
20 that he was interviewed in 2017?

21 THE COURT: Well, you know, I guess I'm trying to  
22 understand what the argument would be based upon the timing,  
23 and I just don't hear anything articulated other than that  
24 this means the government's investigation was incomplete.  
25 Which, you know, again, it doesn't go to the weight, the

Proceedings

10208

1 sufficiency, the relevance of the evidence or whether or not  
2 there's reasonable doubt based on the statements of a witness.

3 MR. DUBIN: We think it does, and if Your Honor is  
4 precluding me from doing it, I won't raise it so there's no  
5 objection.

6 MR. PITLUCK: Thank you, Judge.

7 THE COURT: All right. Are all the jurors here?

8 MS. DENERSTEIN: Your Honor you asked Mr. Kessler  
9 and I to confer about the exhibits on Mr. Dooley, and we have,  
10 and I think we agreed on a list of what was admitted and for  
11 what purposes.

12 There were three exhibits that were not formally  
13 offered. We'd like to offer them. And I spoke to Mr. Kessler  
14 about this, I don't believe -- and we can do this right now  
15 for purposes of the record, and we don't need to do any  
16 reading to the jury.

17 MR. KESSLER: That's correct.

18 THE COURT: And Mr. Kessler agrees to admitting the  
19 exhibits?

20 MR. KESSLER: I do.

21 THE COURT: And, I'm sorry, the limitation on these  
22 exhibits, offered for the truth only or not?

23 MR. KESSLER: I don't believe on these that  
24 Ms. Denerstein has a chart.

25 THE COURT: So you're both advocating that I not



## Proceedings

10209

1 advise the jury as to which exhibits they may not consider for  
2 the truth, or you're saying you don't want this read to the  
3 jury?

4 MS. DENERSTEIN: I don't think that reading it to  
5 the jury will serve a useful purpose. I don't think they'll  
6 remember the numbers. I think that when both sides have  
7 wanted the instruction, they have requested Your Honor to  
8 provide it.

9 THE COURT: Well, no, there are a whole slew of  
10 exhibits that either were not moved for admission or were  
11 moved in bulk and then when the witness was actually --  
12 yesterday I did try to identify which were not offered for the  
13 truth. The day before there were also a number of exhibits  
14 that came in where they were in bulk, I think there was a long  
15 list of exhibits and specific instructions as to each exhibit  
16 were not given.

17 MR. KESSLER: Your Honor, I think there's two  
18 different things. I don't think we need to read exhibits. I  
19 think we can just offer the exhibits now for purposes of the  
20 record.

21 I think for purposes of informing the jury which  
22 exhibits are offered not for the truth, that is something the  
23 Court can tell the jury. We can make a list that goes back  
24 with the exhibits just to make that clear. That's completely  
25 fine.

## Proceedings

10210

1 THE COURT: All right. I think that might be a good  
2 solution that would save time rather than go through and  
3 expect the jury to just remember numbers.

4 Would that be acceptable since you reached an  
5 agreement and the way that the exhibits came in in bulk, it  
6 was not made clear to the jury.

7 MR. BRODSKY: Your Honor, I do think we should do  
8 that. That's -- we closed our case, the government's closed  
9 their case. There's a huge record of Your Honor's rulings  
10 with respect to various exhibits. We will have to go  
11 through the record, and I know Your Honor with respect to  
12 specific testimony, since certain testimony was, in effect,  
13 elicited but not for the truth. The jury's paying attention.  
14 They know which exhibits. They were taking notes.

15 THE COURT: If you take the position that the  
16 record's closed then the record's closed. I mean we're trying  
17 to make the record complete and accurate.

18 Ms. Denerstein offered a number of exhibits in bulk.

19 MR. BRODSKY: Understood.

20 THE COURT: After we specifically and painstakingly  
21 went through each one and decided the grounds for  
22 admissibility. When they were moved in in bulk, they were not  
23 identified to the jury as to which ones were offered and not  
24 for the truth and -- and yesterday exhibits were shown to the  
25 jury but never moved in. They're not officially in the

## Proceedings

10211

1 record. So I tried to fix it yesterday by going through and  
2 listing which ones were offered not for truth and which ones  
3 weren't. But to say that the record's closed and the defense  
4 has rested is to suggest that she shouldn't be allowed to put  
5 in the exhibits she forgot to move in.

6 MR. BRODSKY: My suggestion, Your Honor, is not to  
7 go back through the whole record and not go back to all the  
8 exhibits and not provide the --

9 THE COURT: No, he's is not trying to do that --

10 MR. BRODSKY: We're just talking about the exhibits  
11 in the last few days. The record isn't clear about which of  
12 those should be admitted. The two options are the Court can  
13 read the entire list to the jury so it's in the transcript or  
14 we can give the jury a list.

15 THE COURT: I mean I can read it into the transcript  
16 and that way they can get a read back if they want, if you  
17 don't want a list going back. All right?

18 So before we have closings, I should probably do  
19 that. Do we have the final list?

20 MR. KESSLER: Ms. Denerstein has it.

21 And, Your Honor, if the Court remembers, the defense  
22 rested yesterday subject to addressing this exhibit issue.

23 MR. BRODSKY: If it's easier for Your Honor, we'll  
24 give them a list and we'll put a chart together, we'll agree  
25 on it and we can give it to Your Honor for the record.

Proceedings

10212

1 THE COURT: However, you want to do it, I don't make  
2 decisions based on what's easy for me.

3 MR. BRODSKY: Nor do I.

4 THE COURT: If it's easier to read it in and they  
5 can get the transcript read back every time they forget or  
6 need an exhibit, that's fine, we will get a lot of notes and  
7 that's fine, I'll just call you up and we'll read the note, or  
8 we' can give them a list, it doesn't matter to me.

9 MS. DENERSTEIN: We have conferred, we'll give them  
10 a list but, Your Honor, with all due respect just so that the  
11 record is clear, I did talk to Mr. Kessler about how I was  
12 going to proceed in offering it in bulk, it wasn't a surprise.  
13 So I just would like the record to reflect that I have  
14 conferred with the government about this, that it wasn't an  
15 intent to --

16 THE COURT: I'm not accusing you of any intent, I'm  
17 just saying the record -- I know that exhibits were offered  
18 did not reflect the painstaking lengthy review of each  
19 individual document.

20 MS. DENERSTEIN: Correct.

21 THE COURT: And the rulings I made.

22 MR. DUBIN: Correct. But if you recall, our  
23 discussion was that Mr. Kessler objected at the time or asked  
24 the Court to give an instruction, but regardless we'll send a  
25 list back and just to read back we'd like to inform it was

Proceedings

10213

1 moved in evidence.

2 THE COURT: And I think there were some also that  
3 you were not offering for the truth in any event. But that  
4 distinction wasn't made when they were offered in bulk, that's  
5 my only point and I felt that the record, and still feel that  
6 the record could benefit from some clarification --

7 MR. DUBIN: So --

8 THE COURT: I'm not accusing anybody of wrongdoing.

9 MS. DENERSTEIN: -- the list I think is fine because  
10 they have the list. I think we'll just figure it out  
11 afterwards.

12 MR. KESSLER: So the only thing we need to do before  
13 the close of evidence is to the extent there are exhibits that  
14 should have been offered and weren't, they need to go into the  
15 record and then the list needs to be prepared to go back with  
16 the exhibits.

17 THE COURT: All right, so do you want to make your  
18 offer?

19 MS. DENERSTEIN: Yes. The first one is Defense  
20 Exhibit 1010 was received into evidence at sidebar but was  
21 incorrectly noted as a government exhibit. This is trial  
22 transcript page 10,024 and 25.

23 THE COURT: 10,024 and 25?

24 MS. DENERSTEIN: Correct, the pages.

25 THE COURT: Okay, so it's still Defense Exhibit 1010

Proceedings

10214

1 not Government Exhibit.

2 MS. DENERSTEIN: Correct.

3 The second one, the record just needs to be  
4 corrected to reflect that Defense Exhibit 8432 is not Defense  
5 Exhibit 8342.

6 THE COURT: So the correct number is 8432 and not --

7 MS. DENERSTEIN: 8342.

8 THE COURT: Okay.

9 MS. DENERSTEIN: And then the final one, which is  
10 the only one that was not formally offered but was discussed  
11 at sidebar was Defense Exhibit 11,305.

12 THE COURT: All right, now, have you straightened  
13 out how you want to deal with those exhibits that were offered  
14 by a party but were, in fact, already in evidence, and you  
15 said you would straighten that out. If you're giving both to  
16 go back to the jury that's fine, too.

17 MR. KESSLER: I think at this point, to the extent  
18 there are two different documents in the record, we can just  
19 have the jury get the two documents rather than try to go back  
20 and edit the transcript essentially.

21 THE COURT: Okay. So without objection from the  
22 government, the Court will received in evidence Defense  
23 Exhibit 1010; Defense Exhibit 8432, and any references in the  
24 transcript to Defense Exhibit 8342 should be corrected to  
25 reflect the correct exhibit number; and finally the Court

Proceedings

10215

1 receives in evidence Defense Exhibit 11,305.

2 MR. KESSLER: I guess I should say no additional  
3 objection subject to the previous objections that we talked  
4 through already.

5 THE COURT: All right. And are these going to be  
6 offered not for the truth or -- because they should be on the  
7 list in any event.

8 MR. KESSLER: They are on the list.

9 MS. DENERSTEIN: 1010 we redacted, but we'll work  
10 that out.

11 (Defense Exhibit Number 1010, was received in  
12 evidence.)

13 (Defense Exhibit Number 8432, was received in  
14 evidence.)

15 (Defense Exhibit Number 11,305, was received in  
16 evidence.)

17 THE COURT: All right, so the list will reflect  
18 whether or not there are any limitations upon the jury's  
19 consideration of the exhibit.

20 MR. KESSLER: Just say not for the jury room.

21 THE COURT: All right, are we now ready to bring the  
22 jury in?

23 MS. SMITH: Can we take a two-minute bathroom break?

24 THE COURT: Sure. All right.

25 (Whereupon, a recess was taken at 10:02 a.m.)

Summation - Ms. Smith

10216

1 THE COURT: I just want to make a correction. I  
2 think I might have referred to the second case as *Bloom* and it  
3 should have been *Martin*. There were two parties in that case.

4 MR. DUBIN: That's what I was just asked. Thank  
5 you, Your Honor.

6 THE COURT: The case that I referred to as *Bloom*  
7 should be referred to as *Martin*.

8 (Jury enters the courtroom.)

9 THE COURT: Please have a seat. All jurors are  
10 present.

11 At this time, members of the jury, the parties are  
12 going to offer summations. Just as I told you about opening  
13 statements, summations are not evidence, rather summations are  
14 an opportunity that each side has to interpret the evidence  
15 for you and to argue to you what conclusions you should reach  
16 based on the evidence that you heard during the trial and  
17 based on the documents that have been submitted as exhibits in  
18 evidence.

19 So with that in mind, I will ask the government if  
20 they are ready to proceed.

21 MS. SMITH: Yes, Your Honor.

22 THE COURT: All right. Thank you.

23 MS. SMITH: Good morning, ladies and gentlemen.

24 THE JURY: Good morning.

25 MS. SMITH: Over the past two month you have seen



Summation - Ms. Smith

10217

1 and heard overwhelming evidence of two criminal conspiracies,  
2 conspiracies with that man, the defendant, Evan Greebel, he  
3 with Shkreli and others to defraud Retrophin, a  
4 publicly-traded company, his client, and to illegally control  
5 the trading of his client's stock and deceive the investing  
6 public.

7 As my colleague, Mr. Kessler, told you in his  
8 opening statement, the defendant had a duty to act in the best  
9 interest of his client, Retrophin, a publicly-traded company.  
10 But he betrayed that duty. Rather than acting in Retrophin's  
11 interest, the defendant acted in his own self-interests and  
12 the interests of his coconspirator, Martin Shkreli. He used  
13 his skills as a lawyer to work behind the scenes and enabled  
14 Martin Shkreli to steal millions of dollars from Retrophin.  
15 And one fraud was not enough for the defendant. He also  
16 schemed with Shkreli and others to illegally control the  
17 trading of Retrophin stock and to defraud the investing  
18 public.

19 This has been a long trial. And we thank you for  
20 your patience, but we are now at the end and you have before  
21 you all of the evidence that has come in over the past ten  
22 weeks. You have heard the testimony. You have seen the  
23 emails. You have read the records. You have seen how the  
24 defendant helped to use Retrophin's money to pay back Martin  
25 Shkreli's defrauded hedge fund investors. You have seen how

Summation - Ms. Smith

10218

1 he helped Martin Shkreli control the Fearnow shares and  
2 restrict trading in those shares to make sure Retrophin shares  
3 were not sold in the public market.

4 And you've seen emails that were just between the  
5 defendant and Martin Shkreli, emails that they thought would  
6 never see the light of day. Emails that further reveal the  
7 true nature and role of the defendant. The man behind the  
8 scene. The man who was scheming with Martin Shkreli to commit  
9 a fraud against his client that was paying the defendant's law  
10 firm millions of dollars in legal fees.

11 So why did he do it? Why did the defendant commit  
12 these crimes? You know the answer. For the oldest reason in  
13 the book. For money. The defendant did it for money, to move  
14 up the ranks in his firm, and he did it to please and to  
15 protect Martin Shkreli, the man who controlled the purse  
16 strings of Retrophin without Shkreli's stamp of approval, the  
17 defendant could have lost Retrophin, his biggest and most  
18 important client. To protect millions of dollars in fees, he  
19 committed these two crimes, and in doing so, the defendant  
20 crossed the line from legal adviser to criminal coconspirator.

21 So let me take a step back and give you a sense of  
22 what you're going to hear this morning. I won't be able to  
23 mention every single piece of evidence that you saw, otherwise  
24 we will be here for another ten weeks, but I will help you put  
25 together the key evidence. The key information that you see

Summation - Ms. Smith

10219

1 so you can see the whole story. And that's important because  
2 each of the witnesses that came in before you only had a small  
3 piece of that much bigger story. They were present for only  
4 certain events, knew only certain people, or got only certain  
5 emails. And, in fact, many of the witnesses who came before  
6 you didn't have a lot of direct contact with the defendant.  
7 That was intentional.

8 For these schemes to succeed the defendant had to  
9 play his role, and that role was to be the man operating  
10 behind the scene, out of sight. He was the one that made  
11 these massive frauds look legitimate and look legal. It is  
12 only by taking all of these different pieces of evidence from  
13 all of these different witnesses, documents and putting them  
14 in a context of the emails between the defendant and Martin  
15 Shkreli that you saw come in through Special Agent Delgado  
16 that we assembled a clear picture of what happened; the  
17 defendant's role in the fraud and the overwhelming evidence of  
18 the guilt.

19 So I have just a few notes before we start walking  
20 through the evidence. Judge Matsumoto is going to instruct  
21 you on the law and what the judge says controls. But I'm  
22 going to preview for you some of the legal elements that  
23 you're going to consider during deliberations. And I'm going  
24 to show you how we've proven each of those legal elements  
25 beyond a reasonable doubt.

Summation - Ms. Smith

10220

1 And second, you're not going to get a copy of the  
2 PowerPoint slides that I'm going to go through today, instead  
3 I'm going to use them to help us walk through the evidence.  
4 But I'm going to note the exhibit numbers as I go through and  
5 transcript sites and you can take notes on any of those as we  
6 talk about them.

7 So with that said, we're going to start with the  
8 first of the two counts, Count One, which is the wire fraud  
9 conspiracy.

10 And this conspiracy charges that the defendant and  
11 his coconspirators, which included Martin Shkreli and others,  
12 conspired to defraud Retrophin by stealing money and shares  
13 from a public company to pay the debt of Martin Shkreli and  
14 the MSMB entities through the settlement and its holding  
15 agreement that we've heard so much about.

16 And so these are the elements of the wire fraud  
17 conspiracy. I'm going to touch on them very briefly in the  
18 beginning here, and we'll talk about them again at the end and  
19 then the Judge will also give you these during your actual  
20 deliberations and instructions.

21 And there are two elements of wire fraud conspiracy.  
22 First, that there was a conspiracy to commit wire fraud; and  
23 second, that the defendant knowingly and intentionally became  
24 a member of the conspiracy. And a conspiracy, as Mr. Kessler  
25 told you in the beginning, is just an agreement. And

Summation - Ms. Smith

10221

1 underneath there was also the element of wire fraud, which is  
2 the underlying crime.

3           So what this means in a nutshell is that it is a  
4 crime to agree to take money or property from somebody, and  
5 here in this count we're charging that Retrophin is a public  
6 company, based on lies or omissions. And for some of the  
7 elements of this crime, there's no dispute as to what  
8 happened. There's no dispute that money was taken from  
9 Retrophin to pay MSMB investors. And there's no dispute that  
10 wires such as emails or bank transfers were made.

11           So what we need to prove to you is that the  
12 defendant agreed to do this with at least one other person.  
13 And that he did so knowingly and intentionally through  
14 material lies and omissions with the intent to defraud  
15 Retrophin.

16           Lies are easy. They're just false statements and  
17 misrepresentations and we'll walk through those  
18 misrepresentations. And an omission is just a failure to  
19 disclose. A failure to speak up and say something. And  
20 you'll hear that that only matters if you have a duty to speak  
21 up.

22           And here the defendant had that duty to Retrophin  
23 because he was the company's lawyer. So he had the  
24 responsibility to provide them with certain information. And  
25 you'll hear that he did not disclose material important

Summation - Ms. Smith

10222

1 information related to the settlement and consulting  
2 agreement.

3 And, again, it's important to remember that a  
4 conspiracy is just an agreement. And you'll hear from the  
5 judge that there's no requirement of success. So that even if  
6 the defendant and others agreed to defraud Retrophin by taking  
7 money and property from it, and never actually did it, that  
8 would be good enough for the crime. As is clear from the  
9 evidence that you're going to see, they did, in fact, carry  
10 out that plan.

11 And I will now walk you through the evidence that  
12 shows beyond a reasonable doubt that the defendant is guilty  
13 of the conspiracy. And I had like to start and set the stage  
14 by talking about the two hedge funds that Martin Shkreli ran;  
15 MSMB Capital and MSMB Healthcare that turned out to be frauds,  
16 and it's important background for the conspiracy charge in  
17 Count One because without the fraud, we don't have the angry  
18 investors that need to be paid back with the money and shares  
19 going to Retrophin.

20 So starting with MSMB Capital, which is the first of  
21 the hedge funds, you know that this was a hedge fund run by  
22 Martin Shkreli and you heard from a number of investors in the  
23 fund, including Sarah Hassan and Darren Blanton. And you know  
24 that what happened was those investors put the money into the  
25 fund, and then on February 1st, 2011, Shkreli lost all the

Summation - Ms. Smith

10223

1 money in the fund by a series of trades called the Orex  
2 trades, and he not only lost all the money in the fund, but  
3 the way he did the trade he also wound up owing Merrill Lynch  
4 \$7 million. And that was in, again, February 2011. And we  
5 saw the bank accounts that showed that after those trades  
6 MSMB Capital had no money left.

7 You also know that Retrophin was actually founded  
8 after MSMB Capital lost all of its money and that no money was  
9 ever transferred from MSMB Capital to Retrophin, that was the  
10 bank accounts, Government's Exhibit 91C and 902C.

11 And you know that the defendant knew that  
12 MSMB Capital had never invested in Retrophin. And how do you  
13 know that? You know that from a cap table. And there were a  
14 lot of cap tables that we looked at over the course of this  
15 trial.

16 But what's important about the cap table again is  
17 that it indicates who had shares in the company. And it  
18 indicates who invested shares or who had gotten shares in a  
19 different way. And you know that the defendant maintained the  
20 cap table because he was the lawyer for the company. And you  
21 know from Howard Jacob's testimony that he was diligent and  
22 hard working and he understood how cap tables worked.

23 And this cap table, which I'm showing you here, is  
24 Government Exhibit 1114 from February 2012. And it's not very  
25 complicated. There aren't a lot of companies on it. And at

Summation - Ms. Smith

10224

1 this point in February 2012, you can see that only MSMB  
2 Healthcare is on the cap table. It's the only hedge fund  
3 that's actually invested in Retrophin. And you know that  
4 MSMB Capital has not invested in Retrophin.

5 And, again, there's a cap table from September 2012  
6 that the defendant maintained for MSMB Capital, did not invest  
7 money in Retrophin. So that's important to keep in mind as  
8 well, that the defendant understood that MSMB Capital hadn't.

9 And then with respect to the second hedge fund, MSMB  
10 Healthcare, you heard lots of testimony that MSMB Healthcare  
11 wasn't operated by Shkreli as an actual hedge fund. It was  
12 supposed to be a place where you put money in and then the  
13 fund invested in a lot of different public companies and they  
14 had a long and short positions, and instead what the defendant  
15 did was took everybody's money, put it in the hedge fund and  
16 then funneled it over to Retrophin.

17 And you saw that from the trading and bank records  
18 for MSMB Healthcare, that trading actually decreased for MSMB  
19 Healthcare by March of 2012. And by the end of the year, in  
20 September of 2012, MSMB Healthcare had \$614. And that's  
21 Government Exhibit 917.

22 So you know that MSMB Healthcare was pitched to  
23 these investors. Some investors that you heard from, Richard  
24 Kocher, Alan Geller, David Geller, and that hedge fund, in  
25 fact, was being used to support Retrophin.



1 BY MS. SMITH (CONTINUED):

2 And you also heard that Shkreli lied to the  
3 investors and told them that this is not what was happening  
4 so that they understood, they believed they were operating  
5 as a hedge fund even though it was only being used to help  
6 him. And again, the defendant was aware that the money from  
7 MSMB Healthcare was being put into Retrophin because  
8 MSMB Healthcare was on the cap table, unlike MSMB Capital.

9 And so then we get to September, 2012 when we get  
10 the wind-down which all of the investors talked about. And  
11 the wind-down e-mail from Martin Shkreli said to his hedge  
12 fund investors in MSMB Capital and MSMB Healthcare, Hey,  
13 guys, I have decided to wind down the hedge fund. You can  
14 get your investment back in either cash or shares of  
15 Retrophin, but it's up to you, and I will refund that money.  
16 If you want to get it back and reinvest in Retrophin, you  
17 can or you can just get your investment back.

18 And here's where the lies come in. So again,  
19 MSMB Capital actually had no money. MSMB Healthcare, all  
20 the money has been put into Retrophin, but at the same time,  
21 all the investors are receiving performance updates that you  
22 have heard about. So they are being told that their  
23 investments grew and are much bigger than when they put  
24 their money in. But, in fact, for MSMB Capital, the money's  
25 all gone, and for MSMB Healthcare everything was in

Summation - Ms. Smith

10226

1 Retrophin. And we will talk it about in a minute, Retrophin  
2 isn't doing very well. So this is really key to what comes  
3 next because Martin Shkreli has made these representations,  
4 Your investment has gotten much bigger. You can get your  
5 money back, but, in fact, there is no money in MSMB Capital,  
6 and MSMB Healthcare only has Retrophin and Retrophin is not  
7 doing very well.

8           So this is what set the stage for the conspiracy  
9 that is charged in Count 1. What Martin Shkreli needs to do  
10 is something with respect to MSMB Capital because he had no  
11 money left. He has never invested in Retrophin. He has  
12 nothing to give these investors who he has promised he can  
13 give money or shares back to. So he has to make it look  
14 like MSMB Capital actually put money into Retrophin, and  
15 that way he can actually give those people at least  
16 Retrophin shares, you know, when they come knocking and  
17 asking for their investment back. And the defendant played  
18 a key role in getting MSMB on the cap table, and more  
19 importantly making it look like MSMB Capital actually  
20 invested money into Retrophin. Which will be very important  
21 when we get to the settlement.

22           So again, if we start with what the defendant  
23 knew, and remember, the defendant started working for  
24 MSMB Healthcare and MSMB Capital in the summer of 2011. We  
25 heard from Bernadette Davida about the introduction and then

Summation - Ms. Smith

10227

1 beginning in 2012 he was working for Retrophin as  
2 Retrophin's lawyer. Retrophin did not have an in-house  
3 counsel and Mr. Greebel was serving as outside counsel, but  
4 there was no other lawyer, so he was functioning as  
5 Retrophin's lawyer in this time period. And again, he is  
6 maintaining the cap table so he knows in February of 2012  
7 that MSMB Capital had not invested the money. And he is  
8 also learning throughout 2012 who is getting shares and how  
9 shares were moving around and you heard a lot of testimony  
10 about this, the cap table. And you see that he has learned  
11 that Mr. Shkreli transferred shares to various people,  
12 including Mulleady and Mr. Fernandez, and this is an e-mail  
13 from the that time period in May of 2012 where he is  
14 learning about the various transfers that Mr. Shkreli has  
15 made.

16 And then we get to September of 2012, which is  
17 time of the wind-down e-mail. And this is  
18 Government's Exhibit 445. And we can see that what is on  
19 the cap table are those transfers that Mr. Shkreli had made  
20 transfers of shares to Mr. Biestek and Mr. Fernandez,  
21 Mr. Mulleady. They are all on the cap table. MSMB Capital  
22 is nothing, clearly did not put money into Retrophin. It is  
23 not on the cap table at this point.

24 And we can look again by the time we get to  
25 November of the 2012, the story is the same. You saw a lot

Summation - Ms. Smith

10228

1 of cap tables in between. There are no cap tables before  
2 September of 2012, which we will look at that actually had  
3 MSMB Capital on the cap table. And again, this is not a big  
4 complicated cap table. It is very clear to see who has put  
5 money into this company.

6 And then we get to the end of November, 2012,  
7 November 25th. And there was this e-mail conversation that  
8 we looked at with Special Agent Delzotto between the  
9 defendant and Mr. Shkreli. And they are talking about  
10 unwinding share transfers. And Mr. Shkreli says, Can you  
11 prepare a surrender agreement? And you can see that  
12 Mr. Greebel's response is, What is the surrender agreement?  
13 What do you want to do? And Mr. Shkreli says, I want to  
14 cancel a specific transfer I made before. So they are  
15 talking November, 2012 about canceling something, and they  
16 are talking about it doing it at the present time in  
17 November of 2012.

18 And if we continue with Government's Exhibit 459,  
19 the defendant said, It is hard to unwind stuff, so it is  
20 hard to unwind the transfer you did, but it is easier if the  
21 person just transfers the shares back to you. And  
22 Mr. Shkreli said, Okay. That works. And that is a  
23 conversation they have on November 25th. And that is very  
24 important to keep in mind because, as you remember from the  
25 testimony, there is a whole series of transfers that happen

Summation - Ms. Smith

10229

1 right after that. And they are transfers of shares back  
2 from other people to Mr. Shkreli exactly as it is discussed  
3 in this e-mail, and those transfers eventually get dates put  
4 on them that are not November of 2012 but, in fact, are June  
5 and July of 2012. And this is the conversation that the  
6 defendant and Mr. Shkreli have right before that series of  
7 transfers takes place.

8 And so this is the series of transfers that I want  
9 to talk about. This is Government's Exhibit 111-15, and  
10 this is basically Mr. Shkreli carrying out exactly what he  
11 and the defendant discussed with the exception of instead of  
12 I'm going to have shares transferred back to me now, the  
13 dates wind up getting made much earlier, even though it was  
14 clear that the transfers are, in fact, taking place in  
15 November.

16 So this is the e-mail from Jackson Su to the  
17 defendant, Mr. Shkreli and Mr. Biestek, who is another  
18 co-conspirator on November 29th, 2012 attaching a share  
19 transfer. And we looked at these a bunch. But this is the  
20 first share transfer that comes in and it has November 29th  
21 as the date on it. It also has kind of the scan where it  
22 was sideways, and you heard testimony from Jackson Su that  
23 this document was kind of dropped on his desk on that date  
24 from Mr. Shkreli and he just put the date that he received  
25 it on his desk.

Summation - Ms. Smith

10230

1 And we got the testimony from Corey Massella, the  
2 famous WTF e-mail and his reaction was, you know, twofold.  
3 One was, again, where all of these kind of things that were  
4 changing on the cap table.

5 But secondly, he thought that the transfer was  
6 very strange because it was a transfer of shares from  
7 Mr. Biestek to Mr. Shkreli. And he testified that it is  
8 very odd for an employee to be transferring shares back to  
9 the CEO. And so this was one of the reasons he kind of kept  
10 an eye on it and made sure he understood what was going on,  
11 and we will talk about that in a minute.

12 And then we get the response from the defendant.  
13 And the defendant says, Please re-execute the transfer  
14 agreement because the document transferring shares from  
15 Mr. Biestek to Mr. Shkreli was for Retrophin, LLC, and by  
16 this time in November of 2012 it is actually Retrophin, Inc.  
17 So the defendant is saying you're making a transfer today,  
18 it needs to be Retrophin, Inc. You know, the document isn't  
19 right.

20 And then Mr. Shkreli responds and says that  
21 transfer happened in June, and we know that that is not true  
22 because they are discussing November, 2012 getting things  
23 transferred back and then we get this transfer agreement  
24 that shows up. But nonetheless, Mr. Shkreli says that  
25 agreement happened in June. And then what happens is that

Summation - Ms. Smith

10231

1 he provided Mr. Su with a second copy. And all of a sudden  
2 we have this signature block here with the whiteout tape on  
3 it. And so instead of having the date on which the document  
4 was actually dropped off and the date that was put on by  
5 Mr. Su, all of a sudden we have a date of July 1st, 2012.  
6 And keep in mind Mr. Shkreli's e-mail said that agreement  
7 was signed in June. So it is not even the same date that  
8 Mr. Shkreli is claiming in the e-mail. And as you can  
9 imagine this gets a reaction, because the defendant says to  
10 Jackson Su please call me. And what winds up happening is  
11 that Mr. Shkreli creates a third version of the document and  
12 this time the date is June 1st of 2012. So as between the  
13 three versions, we get November 29th, the date the document  
14 was actually dropped on Jackson Su's desk, then we get  
15 July 1st, and then we get June 1st, all within a span of a  
16 couple of hours.

17 And we know that the defendant discussed this  
18 transfer with Marek Biestek because there is an e-mail after  
19 he sends the response saying, Hey, guys, the document is not  
20 right because the transfer is happening now, but the  
21 document is for Retrophin, LLC, which has not existed since  
22 the fall. He then has a conversation with Mr. Biestek about  
23 it the next day on November 30th of 2012. And that timing  
24 is very important because the other thing that happened on  
25 November 30th of 2012 is that Mr. Shkreli had conversations

Summation - Ms. Smith

10232

1 with two other people. He wants to have transfer shares  
2 with him, Mr. Mulleady and Mr. Fernandez. And this is  
3 Government's Exhibit 447. On November 30, 2012, that exact  
4 same date, Mr. Mulleady agrees to transfer his shares back  
5 to Mr. Shkreli and he says he does it in order to get the  
6 Fearnow shares. And we will talk about the Fearnow shares  
7 more in Count 2. But you know this transfer happens on  
8 November 30, 2012, because they are discussing it in the  
9 e-mail the same way that the defendant and Shkreli discussed  
10 the share transfer before they happened, the same way the  
11 defendant discussed Mr. Biestek's transfer on the same day.

12 And you have again an e-mail with  
13 Government's Exhibit 462 where Mr. Shkreli is saying the  
14 same thing to Mr. Fernandez. You know, transfer me back  
15 those shares and I will give you the opportunity to get  
16 Fearnow shares. And as we will talk about in Count 2, the  
17 defendant is intimately involved in figuring out who to  
18 distribute the shares to for the Fearnow shares and how many  
19 and who is getting what. And all of these conversations  
20 about the transfers are happening in that same time period.

21 And so what happens next on December 3, 2012,  
22 Jackson Su sends this final share transfer, and there are  
23 actually four share transfers attached. And there is the  
24 three that we have already talked about, the transfer of  
25 stuff from Biestek to Mr. Shkreli; from Mr. Fernandez to



Summation - Ms. Smith

10233

1 Mr. Shkreli; and from Mr. Mulleady to Mr. Shkreli. So three  
2 employees transferring stock back to the CEO, which again,  
3 as Mr. Massella thought, is a very strange mix there. And  
4 all three of these, you know, have the June or July of 2012,  
5 even though we know that these transfers actually happened  
6 in November.

7 And then the last transfer that is attached to  
8 this e-mail is a transfer of stock from Mr. Shkreli to  
9 MSMB Capital. And this is the transfer that is really  
10 significant. The other three transfers are the ones that  
11 let you know that the defendant knew that these transfers  
12 happened in November. They are all happening at the same  
13 time. And then we also get this transfer from Mr. Shkreli  
14 to MSMB Capital with the same date as two of the others,  
15 July 1st, 2012 only showing up on December 3rd, 2012; and we  
16 know that MSMB Capital had never been on the cap table prior  
17 to that. And this is the key transfer from Mr. Shkreli to  
18 MSMB Capital, and that is Government's Exhibit 111-26A. And  
19 keep in mind, this is December 3, 2012, on the exact same  
20 date Mr. Shkreli sends an updated cap table and for the  
21 first time, MSMB Capital is on the cap table and shows that  
22 it has 75,000 shares in Retrophin.

23 And then the defendant and Mr. Shkreli have a  
24 conversation with Mr. Massella. And again, Mr. Massella is  
25 the accountant. He is trying to put the books together for

Summation - Ms. Smith

10234

1 the reverse merger and he is asking what is the purpose of  
2 these share transfers, because if the share transfers are  
3 some sort of compensation to Mr. Shkreli, they are going to  
4 have to record it a certain way. And he is also kind of  
5 questioning what is going on because there are transfers  
6 from the employees to the CEO, and he has a conversation  
7 with Mr. Shkreli and with Mr. Greebel. What is the purpose  
8 of the transfers? And he told you that this conversation  
9 was both about an initial Biestek/Shkreli transfer and then  
10 eventually about all four transfers that show up in that  
11 e-mail.

12 And this is the testimony that Mr. Massella gave.  
13 He said for all of these share transfers, the explanation we  
14 received was that these were gifts outside the company  
15 between individuals, so it had no effect on the company's  
16 financials. And this was clear and unambiguous testimony  
17 that the defendant was telling Mr. Massella, that these  
18 transfers were a gift. They were not received by  
19 MSMB Capital because MSMB Capital put any money into  
20 Retrophin, it is because Mr. Shkreli gave the shares to  
21 MSMB Capital. And that is really, really important for what  
22 happens next. Because what happens next is that at the time  
23 of the reverse merger, there is a filing called a Form 13-D  
24 that is made and that Deb Oremland testified that the  
25 Form 13-D is the form that discloses information about the

Summation - Ms. Smith

10235

1 company, and it is important that that information be  
2 accurate because people in the public will read the document  
3 and make decisions about whether to invest or not to invest  
4 based on the information they are getting about the company.  
5 And the Form 13-D has a bunch of information in it, and we  
6 will talk about it with respect to Count 2 as well, but one  
7 set of information that it had in it was information about  
8 how the shares were received from MSMB Capital.

9 (Pause in proceedings.)

10 THE COURT: Do you want to continue?

11 MS. SMITH: Okay.

12 THE COURT: We will get some technical help.

13 MS. SMITH: So we were talking about the  
14 Form 13-D.

15 Before we talk about the actual form, I want to  
16 talk about Government's Exhibit 635, which is an e-mail  
17 between the defendant and Mr. Shkreli on December 18, 2012,  
18 and they are discussing the filing of the Form 13-D. And  
19 they are also talking about money that Mr. Shkreli owes to  
20 the defendant's law firm. And Mr. Shkreli said, I'll send  
21 you another \$25,000 for the bill if you get my Form 13-D  
22 filed. And then at the top of the e-mail after they have  
23 had a little more discussion about the bill, he says give me  
24 a call on the 13-D. So we know that they discussed the 13-D  
25 on December 18, 2012. And then on December 19, 2012, the

Summation - Ms. Smith

10236

1 next day, the defendant sends a draft of the Form 13-D, and  
2 this Form 13-D disclosing that MSMB Capital had shares in  
3 Retrophin and it says 375,000 shares. If you remember the  
4 way that when the reverse merger took place, everyone who  
5 had shares on the cap table, there was a multiple of seven,  
6 and so if you had one share, you wound up with seven. So  
7 the transfer was for 75,000 shares, but by the time it gets  
8 to the reverse merger, MSMB Capital had 375,000.

9 And so the document, this is a draft and it says  
10 that MSMB Capital had 375,000 shares of Retrophin. And it  
11 says, Source of funds, and there is a notation there that  
12 says WC. And Deb Oremland, who is from FINRA, testified  
13 that WC means working capital, which means that MSMB's money  
14 was put in for these shares. So basically this document  
15 told the public that MSMB Capital invested money in  
16 Retrophin in order to get those 375,000 shares.

17 You know that is not true. Mr. Shkreli knew that  
18 was not true and the defendant knew that was not true  
19 because they just had that whole conversation with  
20 Mr. Massella about how the shares were a gift. And so  
21 internally they are classifying them as a gift, and then  
22 they are telling the public that the shares were purchased  
23 with working capital. And so this is the 13-D that the  
24 defendant drafted. And then Government's Exhibit 962 is the  
25 13-D that actually gets filed, and it had the same

Summation - Ms. Smith

10237

1 information in it and it is filed the next day, which is  
2 December 30, 2012.

3 And why was this misrepresentation made to the  
4 public about MSMB Capital? And it was made because  
5 Mr. Shkreli wanted to be able to tell the MSMB Capital  
6 investors that he had invested their money from MSMB Capital  
7 into Retrophin because he has to explain at some point, as  
8 we will see, where that money went, and he did not want to  
9 tell them that he lost the money in the trade and that he  
10 had been lying to them with performance updates. And so he  
11 has this document which is not publically filed and makes it  
12 look like MSMB Capital had money, and that money was  
13 invested in Retrophin and Retrophin shares were gotten as a  
14 result.

15 And, in fact, if you look at  
16 Government's Exhibit 103-29, Mr. Shkreli uses this document  
17 for that exact purpose on the same date that the defendant  
18 drafts it. He sends it to Darren Blanton and he says,  
19 Darren Blanton, you know, you were asking me what happened  
20 to my investment, because if you remember, Darren Blanton  
21 tried to get his money out even before the wind-down e-mail  
22 and Mr. Shkreli just strung him along and wouldn't give him  
23 any answers and send some money back and not enough, and it  
24 is what makes Darren Blanton go to the SEC. And so this is  
25 Mr. Shkreli on the same day that the defendant drafted that

Summation - Ms. Smith

10238

1 13-D using it to say, Hey, Darren Blanton, this is what  
2 happened to your money. It is in MSMB Capital on a  
3 Form 13-D. We are filing with the public to show you that  
4 MSMB Capital invested in Retrophin.

5 So that creation of the backdated interest for  
6 MSMB Capital in Retrophin is kind of the very first piece of  
7 the story of the conspiracy. And it is very important for a  
8 couple of reasons. One, it obviously pushes back the date  
9 on which MSMB Capital led you to believe he got the  
10 Retrophin shares. But it is far more important because it  
11 was classified internally as gifts, but then a lie was told  
12 to the public and to the investors about the investment,  
13 that it was never made by MSMB Capital into Retrophin. And  
14 it shows that the defendant knew this, made the false  
15 statement on the 13-D anyway and is perpetuating a lie that  
16 Mr. Shkreli is telling those hedge fund investors about what  
17 happened to their investment. And all of this happens in  
18 November and December of 2012. And you know that the first  
19 angry investors who wind up getting a settlement agreements  
20 started hearing sort of in February of 2013.

21 And before we get to February of 2013 and the  
22 settlement agreements, I want to talk about what is going on  
23 in general in that time period and what the defendant knows  
24 about the hedge fund fraud before those angry investors  
25 actually even start showing up and the settlement agreements

Summation - Ms. Smith

10239

1 start getting done. And so for that I want to talk about  
2 the testimony of Michael Rosensaft. And you know that  
3 Michael Rosensaft was one of the defendant's partners at  
4 Katten and that in December of 2012 or January of 2013, the  
5 defendant told him that he had a client who had been  
6 handling an SEC investigation on their own, and that client  
7 was Mr. Shkreli. And that Mr. Rosensaft had a couple of  
8 early meetings with the defendant and Mr. Shkreli about the  
9 SEC investigation. And you know from all the testimony that  
10 you have heard and all the evidence that you saw that the  
11 SEC investigation was into the hedge fraud that we are  
12 talking about. What did Martin Shkreli do with everybody's  
13 money that was invested in MSMB Capital and MSMB Healthcare?  
14 And you know that at those early meetings, Mr. Shkreli said  
15 he lost all of the money in MSMB Capital through the Orex  
16 trades and the defendant was at those meetings. So he knows  
17 at this point in December of 2012, January of 2013 that all  
18 the money in MSMB Capital was lost to the Orex trades.

19           You also know about what Mr. Rosensaft was not  
20 told. And he was not told by the defendant how MSMB Capital  
21 wound up with Retrophin shares after all the money was lost  
22 in the Orex trades. So at the very same time that the  
23 defendant was creating this interest in MSMB Capital in  
24 Retrophin for MSMB Capital, he is not telling Mr. Rosensaft  
25 who is overseeing the response to the SEC investigation how

Summation - Ms. Smith

10240

1 those shares came to be.

2           You also know that Mr. Rosensaft said that he did  
3 not learn of the Merrill Lynch arbitration in the first  
4 meeting. And you remember the Merrill Lynch arbitration  
5 again the Orex trades, Mr. Shkreli loses all the money and  
6 he also owes all of this money to Merrill Lynch. And so  
7 what winds up happening is he winds up having to pay  
8 Merrill Lynch about \$1.5 million in connection with the Orex  
9 trades, and that is money that he did not have to pay  
10 because he had lost all the money in the fund. And that  
11 happened, the agreement was signed in about September  
12 of 2012. And so at the time that they were discussing with  
13 Mr. Rosensaft the SEC investigation and the investigation to  
14 the hedge fund fraud, neither the defendant nor Mr. Shkreli  
15 told him that there was an arbitration and that, in fact,  
16 Mr. Shkreli owed Merrill Lynch money in connection with  
17 those Orex trades. And Mr. Rosensaft also said that the  
18 defendant, Mr. Shkreli, never said that they were discussing  
19 payments related to the Merrill Lynch arbitration.

20           (Pause in proceedings.)

21           MS. SMITH: And one thing we know from the e-mail  
22 between the defendant and Mr. Shkreli that we saw coming  
23 through Agent Delzotto is that the defendant knew about the  
24 Merrill Lynch arbitration. And he didn't just know about  
25 the Merrill Lynch arbitration, but he and Mr. Shkreli



Summation - Ms. Smith

10241

1 discussed the Merrill Lynch arbitration in code, and they  
2 are doing this right in the same time period after that  
3 MSMB Capital interest is created, and they are doing it  
4 before they start talking about the settlement agreement.  
5 And this is an e-mail from December 28, 2012, and an e-mail  
6 at the bottom from the defendant said, What happened to the  
7 other thing?

8 And then Mr. Shkreli responds: Still no news on  
9 the other thing. I am doing my best to get the funds. And  
10 again this is December 28th, 2012.

11 And how do we know that the other thing is the  
12 Merrill Lynch arbitration? Well, in  
13 Government's Exhibit 687, which is an e-mail between the  
14 defendant and Mr. Shkreli, on January 4, 2013, the title of  
15 the e-mail is quote, "the other thing." And Mr. Shkreli  
16 says to Mr. Greebel, I got them down to 125,000 by  
17 January 15th, and the big check by March 1st. And you know  
18 from the Merrill Lynch settlement agreement and amendments,  
19 which came in through stipulation, which is  
20 Government's Exhibit 110-3, that these are the payments for  
21 the Merrill Lynch arbitration. You can see it right in the  
22 document. By March 1st, 2013, the large payment needs to be  
23 made, and in the meantime, the second additional payment of  
24 \$125,000 needs to be made by January 5, 2013. So the other  
25 thing that is being discussed in this e-mail in code is the

Summation - Ms. Smith

10242

1 Merrill Lynch arbitration. And not only do they discuss it  
2 before the Merrill Lynch arbitration payments are sorted  
3 out, not only are they discussing it as the Merrill Lynch  
4 payment arbitration has been made, but then they discuss it  
5 afterwards on January 17, 2013.

6 And this is an e-mail, Government's Exhibit 515 in  
7 which the defendant and Mr. Shkreli are discussing the state  
8 of Retrophin's finances in general, and they are discussing  
9 about how Mr. Shkreli is trying to get money into Retrophin,  
10 and they are discussing it in part because the defendant  
11 wants again, to have his bills paid, legal bills paid.

12 And Mr. Shkreli claims on January 17th, 2013 that  
13 he put out from money that has come in \$125,000 out for that  
14 thing. And we know again from the e-mail that we just saw  
15 that that is a payment to Merrill Lynch. So right here it  
16 is clear that the defendant knows about the Merrill Lynch  
17 arbitration, he knows about the Orex trades and the fact  
18 that Mr. Shkreli lost all money in MSMB Capital because they  
19 are talking about it and they are talking about paying for  
20 it.

21 And the other thing we know about this time period  
22 is that we know that the defendant knows that MSMB has no  
23 money. And the reason we know this is because there, again,  
24 are these discussions about getting the Katten bills paid.  
25 And there is a point in December of 2012 where Mr. Shkreli

Summation - Ms. Smith

10243

1 says MSMB cannot pay Retrophin's bills any further. I wish  
2 it could. And there is lot of discussion in this time  
3 period about MSMB is not paying its bills and the defendant  
4 is trying to get money in for those bills. And if you  
5 remember the testimony from Corey Massella that what  
6 happened by March of 2013 is that there is this \$600,000  
7 that Retrophin has paid to Katten that no one can account  
8 for, and it turns out that it is for the MSMB bills. So we  
9 know that the defendant knows that MSMB does not have any  
10 money.

11 And so this is all of the information that you  
12 need to keep in mind going into the settlement agreement.  
13 So we know that the MSMB Capital and Healthcare fund frauds  
14 were committed by Mr. Shkreli. We know that there was the  
15 wind-down e-mail and that all of these investors are going  
16 to start to ask for their money back in either cash or  
17 shares. We know that the backdated interest has been  
18 created and now it looks like MSMB Capital has invested in  
19 Retrophin even though it has not. You know that the  
20 defendant knows that Mr. Shkreli lost the money in the funds  
21 because they say they had these discussions with Mr.  
22 Rosensaft about the SEC investigation, and you know that the  
23 defendant and Mr. Shkreli knew about the Merrill Lynch  
24 arbitration and they did not tell Mr. Rosensaft. And you  
25 know that the defendant knows that MSMB funds don't have any

Summation - Ms. Smith

10244

1 money. And this is all of the information that is really  
2 important to keep in mind as you think about what the  
3 defendants did once those angry investors showed up and  
4 started asking for money.

5           The two other things I want to kind of note and  
6 have you keep in mind is during this time period which is  
7 what we are going to discuss in Count 2, December of 2012,  
8 January of 2013, Retrophin is really struggling prior to  
9 that first hype in February of 2013. And that is where the  
10 scheme to control the Fearnow shares and to make sure that  
11 the price of Retrophin does not bottom out and the company  
12 does not go under is taking place. So all of that is  
13 ultimately taking place in, you know, the January of 2013  
14 time period.

15           And then the last thing I want you to keep in mind  
16 goes back to the bills that I just mentioned a number of  
17 times. And so we will get into this more in the end, but in  
18 this time period, the late fall of 2012, beginning of 2013,  
19 Katten, the defendant's law firm, is owed close to \$700,000  
20 by Retrophin. Money that has not been paid because we know  
21 that Retrophin at this point does not have a lot of money.  
22 And the defendant is under a lot of pressure and is putting  
23 Mr. Shkreli under a lot of pressure to get those bills paid.  
24 And so that is all very, very important context, but what  
25 happened next is the Government.

Summation - Ms. Smith

10245

1           And so what makes these angry investors start  
2 showing up in the kind of January, February 2013 time  
3 period? Again, if you remember MSMB Capital and  
4 MSMB Healthcare now have these shares in Retrophin, and  
5 in the January of 2013, February of 2013 time period, a lot  
6 of these investors testified that they just got in the mail  
7 shares of Retrophin. And what happened is Mr. Shkreli said  
8 you can have your investment back in cash or shares, and  
9 instead, he just sent them Retrophin shares. And they were  
10 surprised because, A, a lot of them had wanted cash back as  
11 you heard from people like Sarah and Richard Kocher. And  
12 they were surprised because the shares that they got did not  
13 line up with what Mr. Shkreli had told them their investment  
14 was worth. So Sarah Hassan is just one example. She put  
15 \$300,000 into MSMB Capital. Based on those performance  
16 updates that Mr. Shkreli was sending, she thought she had  
17 \$435,000 in the investment and then what she actually  
18 received was about 58,000 shares, and based on the share  
19 price at the time, those 58,000 shares would have been worth  
20 a lot less, about \$227,000.

21           And you also heard everybody complaining because  
22 the shares they got were restricted and they could not trade  
23 them, and they were not sure Retrophin was going to be worth  
24 anything. And so that is the reason these investors start  
25 showing up and saying, Mr. Shkreli, what did you do with our

Summation - Ms. Smith

10246

1 money? What is going on? This is not what I was told that  
2 I had and I demand that you make me whole.

3 And that sets the stage for the settlement  
4 agreement. And we are going to look at this chart a number  
5 of times, but basically it lists out the investor, that each  
6 investor that got a settlement agreement, the first contact  
7 that that investor had with the defendant, which is really  
8 important and we will walk through that, the date on which  
9 the settlement agreement was signed, the cash paid and the  
10 source of that cash and all of the cash that was paid out  
11 from Retrophin. And then to the extent that there were  
12 shares paid out, how many shares and the source of those  
13 shares. And the shares came from two places. They either  
14 came from the Fearnow shares or they came from Retrophin  
15 directly, and we will talk about the differences in those.

16 And we are going to look at what the defendant  
17 knew and what he did and how you know that his actions were  
18 part of the conspiracy to defraud Retrophin, to steal money  
19 and shares for Mr. Shkreli. And I'm going to explain to you  
20 why his actions are inconsistent with protecting Retrophin  
21 or acting in Retrophin's best interest. And again it is  
22 important to remember the defendant tying with Retrophin, a  
23 public company, and not Mr. Shkreli. And we are going to  
24 look at his actions both in the time period of when the  
25 settlement agreements took place and then also what happens

Summation - Ms. Smith

10247

1 after Marcum, the auditors, actually discover the settlement  
2 agreement. So again, keeping in mind everything the  
3 defendant already knows, the SEC investigation and the angry  
4 investors and Martin Shkreli's fraud.

5 Let's take a look at when the investors first  
6 contacted the defendant, what other information he gets from  
7 them about Mr. Shkreli's fraud. So if you will remember  
8 Mr. Rosenwald testified, he is an MSMB Capital investor, and  
9 he was the first investor to contact the defendant. And he  
10 received this letter from Mr. Rosenwald's lawyer that lays  
11 out exactly why Mr. Rosenwald is seeking money, because as  
12 Mr. Rosenwald said, he is an investor in MSMB Capital and it  
13 lays right out in the letter, which is  
14 Government's Exhibit 100-16. We understand you recently  
15 liquidated and converted Dr. Rosenwald investment in MSMB  
16 Capital in shares of Retrophin stock without Dr. Rosenwald's  
17 authority or consent. We have serious concerns that your  
18 unauthorized conversion of Dr. Rosenwald's investment  
19 violates federal and state securities law.

20 And so the first thing the defendant told  
21 Mr. Rosenwald is that Mr. Shkreli is being accused of  
22 committing security fraud, that this is a fraud. And keep  
23 in mind, again, the defendant already had a lot of this  
24 information, but this is the absolute first contact he gets  
25 Mr. Rosenwald, additional information about what Mr. Shkreli

Summation - Ms. Smith

10248

1 did wrong with these hedge funds.

2 And this e-mail, Government's Exhibit 116 was sent  
3 directly to Mr. Shkreli, but then it was subsequently  
4 forwarded to the defendant because he received it on the  
5 same day. And then the first time the defendant had any  
6 contact or discussing Sarah Hassan is three days later, and  
7 Mr. Shkreli tells him that Sarah Hassan is in the same  
8 situation as Dr. Rosenwald. And you heard Sarah Hassan say  
9 that, that her investment had also been converted to  
10 Retrophin shares without her permission.

11 And then you get to March 1st, 2013, and the  
12 defendant gets a copy of a draft of the settlement agreement  
13 proposed by Rosenwald. And there is language in the  
14 settlement agreement itself that explains the fraud that  
15 Mr. Shkreli has committed, the same information that he  
16 liquidated the investment in MSMB Capital and he transferred  
17 it into shares of Retrophin without Mr. Rosenwald's  
18 authority or consent and that he violated securities laws.  
19 And that is the language that is in the settlement agreement  
20 that the defendant takes out of the settlement agreement.  
21 The final draft does not have any information in it about  
22 the fraud that Mr. Shkreli committed.

23 We also see communications from Richard Kocher on  
24 March 6, 2013. The defendant is being told the same thing,  
25 these shares were converted without my permission and



Summation - Ms. Smith

10249

1 Mr. Kocher actually re-forwards the wind-up e-mail where  
2 Mr. Shkreli lied and said that they could get their money  
3 back in cash or shares.

4 In the middle of this time period when all these  
5 investors are coming forward, you also know that the  
6 defendant got an e-mail from Jackson Su. And Jackson Su in  
7 the context of complaining about not getting paid from his  
8 employment also talks about the SEC investigation and the  
9 fact that Martin had been lying about the amount of money  
10 that he actually had in the hedge fund. That is  
11 Government's Exhibit 111-45.

12 (Continued on next page.)  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25

## SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT

10250

1 MS. SMITH: On March 31, 2013, the defendant hears  
2 from Mr. Lavelle, who was an investor in MSMB Healthcare, and  
3 you can see, Government 108-10, Mr. Lavelle saying, "I was not  
4 given an opportunity to debate transfer from MSMB and want to  
5 understand it."

6 And you also heard about conversation that David  
7 Geller, who's an MSMB Healthcare investor, had directly with  
8 the defendant in April of 2013. And in this conversation,  
9 David Geller said he told the defendant what had happened,  
10 that his investment in MSMB Healthcare had been converted and  
11 that he expected that Mr. Shkreli was going to pay him back.  
12 And we also know that they had a conversation, David Geller  
13 and the defendant, where David Geller said he was worried  
14 about being scammed. And we were going to get back to that  
15 later. But you know by this point in April 2013, that  
16 defendant knows David Geller was, in fact, scammed at this  
17 point.

18 And it's important to keep in mind, and we'll go  
19 back to the chart in a minute, that all of this is happening  
20 at the same time. So it is not just one person complaining,  
21 or one little piece of information. You can see that the  
22 defendant and Mr. Shkreli are talking about Kocher, Alan and  
23 David Geller, and Lavelle, all in the same conversation. So  
24 there's overwhelming evidence that the defendant knew exactly  
25 why these investors were angry, and that they were angry

## SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT

10251

1 because of the fraud that Mr. Shkreli had committed. And he  
2 knew that those frauds had nothing to do with Retrophin, and  
3 they had everything to do with Mr. Shkreli and his lies and  
4 the way that he operated those hedge funds.

5 And you'll see later on in what's called the control  
6 memo, that the defendant admits this, he admits that the  
7 reason that the investors were angry and the reason they  
8 wanted their money back, had nothing to do with Retrophin.

9 And so what does the defendant do in the face of  
10 these investors? He helps Shkreli take money and shares from  
11 Retrophin to pay them back. He uses his legal skills and his  
12 position of trust, as Retrophin's lawyer, to paper a series of  
13 agreements that result in cash and shares being taken from the  
14 company to cover up Shkreli's wrongdoing. And I am going to  
15 walk you through the mechanics of how this was done because  
16 that's very important.

17 And we are going to start with Dr. Rosenwald, who's  
18 the first person to receive the settlement agreement. And  
19 Dr. Rosenwald is actually an outlier, we will see from his  
20 agreement here. He's the first settlement agreement, and he's  
21 the only settlement agreement where no cash or shares come  
22 directly from Retrophin.

23 If you can see the settlement agreement itself, it  
24 says that Mr. Shkreli agrees to give him 80,000 freely traded  
25 shares. And, you know, if that's how all of the agreements

## SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT

10252

1 were done, and Mr. Shkreli had said, "Hey, guys, I screwed up,  
2 I took your money, I did something with it I didn't tell you,  
3 and now I am going to pay you back, and I am going to pay you  
4 back with my money and my shares," we wouldn't be here on  
5 Count 1. So the reason that we're here on Count 1 is this is  
6 not what happened. This is the only settlement agreement  
7 that's structured this way, and, in fact, these shares did not  
8 come from Mr. Shkreli.

9           And if you look at the language, it is worded very  
10 carefully. It says Shkreli agrees to deliver or cause to be  
11 delivered to Rosenwald. And he did not, in fact, deliver his  
12 own shares. And 80,000 shares. Where did those shares come  
13 from? If you look at Government Exhibit 558, and there was a  
14 lot of discussion about this, and you also heard from Amy  
15 Merrill, who is the transfer agent, about how all these  
16 transfers happened. But the shares that are used for the  
17 Rosenwald settlement are actually Fearnow shares. And they  
18 are not shares that Mr. Shkreli owned, but they are shares  
19 that he controlled in connection with Count 2. And we'll talk  
20 about that.

21           They were held in the names of other people, but he  
22 directed them, and he directed how those shares would be used.  
23 And as we'll discuss in Count 2, the shares were actually paid  
24 for by Retrophin because the only way that these shares became  
25 available, these were escrowed shares, was because Retrophin

## SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT

10253

1 made a second payment for the Desert Gateway shell, and  
2 allowed these shares to be used. So Retrophin actually  
3 ultimately paid for these shares. They didn't come directly  
4 from Retrophin's stock, but they were Fearnow shares that  
5 Retrophin paid for. And the defendant and Mr. Shkreli moved  
6 the shares around to pay off Dr. Rosenwald.

7 And you can see that the shares were originally held  
8 in the name of Marek Biestek, and, also, in the name of Edmund  
9 Sullivan. 30,000 to Marek Biestek, 50,000 held in the name of  
10 Edmund Sullivan. They are moved around and they're used to  
11 pay off Dr. Rosenwald. And this settlement agreement, and we  
12 will see this later, is actually never disclosed. So no one  
13 is ever told that this settlement agreement happens.

14 The second settlement agreement that I want to talk  
15 about is the settlement agreement for Spencer Spielberg. And  
16 this settlement agreement is also a little unusual, it's dated  
17 April 30, 2013, but if you remember, Spencer Spielberg started  
18 contacting the defendant and Shkreli in March of 2013. And  
19 Mr. Spielberg received \$25,000 and also a small number of  
20 shares, and both from Retrophin.

21 And this settlement agreement, while it was signed  
22 on April 30, 2013, the money was actually already paid. So  
23 the money is taken from Retrophin on March 14, 2013. There's  
24 no negotiation, there's no discussion, who should pay, you  
25 know, how should this get paid. There's a wire sent from

## SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT

10254

1 Retrophin, and it is sent immediately when Mr. Spielberg  
2 complains. And then later on there's a settlement agreement  
3 to paper the wire that went out already, and then also to  
4 provide Mr. Spielberg with some additional shares.

5 And how do we know this? Well, there's an e-mail  
6 that's Government Exhibit 567. And it is in the e-mail to  
7 Mr. Shkreli, the defendant, Mr. Biestek, and Leonora Izerne,  
8 who's Mr. Shkreli's sister, are discussing the wire transfer  
9 that went out in March. And Martin Shkreli is saying that he  
10 wants to have the wire transfer sent to Mr. -- to the  
11 defendant so that they can paper the settlement agreement.  
12 And Leonora finds the evidence of the wire and sends it to the  
13 defendant, and he says, "I'm working on the settlement  
14 agreement."

15 So this is a situation where there was an investor  
16 who was unhappy with her MSMB investment, the money just gets  
17 paid from Retrophin, no discussion, no settlement agreement,  
18 and then the next month they actually go ahead and paper it.

19 And then the last agreement I want to talk about  
20 separately is the Hassan settlement agreement. And this one  
21 is more along the lines of the remaining settlement agreements  
22 that happened. And you can see that in this e-mail, which is  
23 in April of 2013, the defendant and Mr. Shkreli are discussing  
24 the -- how the settlement agreement is going to get signed.  
25 And if you remember, it is important for this, Sarah Hassan

## SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT

10255

1 never threatened to sue Retrophin. She actually never  
2 threatened to sue an MSMB entity or Mr. Shkreli either. She  
3 doesn't even know why she got a settlement agreement. She was  
4 just expecting to be repaid. And so that's the context for  
5 this discussion. She didn't ask for a settlement agreement,  
6 she just wanted her money back, but the defendant and  
7 Mr. Shkreli tell her that she needs a settlement agreement.

8           So if you remember, there's a draft that gets sent  
9 to her, and then she sends a draft back, and there are a  
10 couple that are exchanged. And, here, the defendant and  
11 Mr. Shkreli are discussing one of those drafts. And  
12 Mr. Shkreli says Retrophin will be making the payment. And so  
13 you can see here that there is a conscious decision to have  
14 the payment made not by Mr. Shkreli, who's the one who caused  
15 the situation, but to take the money from Retrophin. And,  
16 here, Mr. Shkreli says that the agreement should contemplate  
17 releasing any liability from Retrophin, and that's one of the  
18 reasons or benefits of the exchange. And so that's the  
19 justification, is that we are going to release Retrophin for  
20 liability, and that's how we are going to justify taking money  
21 from Retrophin. But it is a total fiction because Retrophin  
22 was never being threatened to be sued by Ms. Hassan, and  
23 there's no reason for Retrophin to have any liability. And so  
24 these are the kind of e-mails, the plan is actually being  
25 discussed, and Retrophin is the one who's having the money

## SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT

10256

1 taken from it to pay for things that Mr. Shkreli has done.

2 And we know that the defendant does exactly what  
3 Mr. Shkreli asked him to. Because you can see that in the  
4 draft that Ms. Hassan sent, she had Shkreli or the MSMB  
5 entities agreeing to pay the settlement amount because that's  
6 who lost her money. And, instead, the defendant makes the  
7 change, takes out Shkreli and the MSMB entities, and says the  
8 money comes from Retrophin.

9 And so, again, if you go back to the chart, we have  
10 been through the Rosenwald, the Hassan, and the Spielberg  
11 agreements, and, you know, also, there were others for Kocher,  
12 David Geller, and Schuyler Marshall. For Mr. Kocher, similar  
13 kind of as Sarah Hassan. There was a number of drafts that  
14 went back and forth, and, ultimately, he received more than  
15 \$100,000 directly from Retrophin, and shares that came from  
16 the Fearnow shares. David Geller received money directly from  
17 Retrophin. And then Schuyler Marshall, we are going to talk  
18 about separately, because Schuyler Marshall is a special case.  
19 He is the last settlement agreement that gets done, and it  
20 gets done in a particular way, and it is because Marcum at  
21 that point has discovered the settlement agreements.

22 But we know that the defendant was intimately  
23 involved, not only in drafting the agreements and approving  
24 the agreements, but, also, in making sure that the money and  
25 shares actually got taken from Retrophin. And we know that



## SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT

10257

1 because of the share transfer records that we saw with Amy  
2 Merrill. So, for example, the topic, the exhibit here is  
3 Government Exhibit 115-30, where Mr. Greebel is sending to  
4 Spencer Spielberg a settlement agreement to the share transfer  
5 agent and asking for the shares to be taken from Retrophin and  
6 given to Spencer Spielberg in connection with that agreement.

7 And then Government Exhibit 582. There's a  
8 discussion there about -- actually, and I think that's  
9 actually the wrong exhibit on the slide. But there are  
10 e-mails, we saw with Spencer Spielberg, they are discussing  
11 the actual wire. There's also an e-mail, for example, where  
12 the defendant is directing Ms. Izerne to send a wire to  
13 Mr. Kocher's lawyers in connection with the settlement. So  
14 the defendant is involved in getting the shares paid out, he's  
15 involved in getting the money paid out on Retrophin.

16 And so the next thing I want to talk about is kind  
17 of how you know, again, that the defendant intended to defraud  
18 Retrophin through these settlement agreements. And there's  
19 been a lot of discussion about the investors were threatening  
20 to sue Retrophin. And I think it's important to be very  
21 clear, and you can go through the evidence yourself, that the  
22 only investor who directly threatened to sue Retrophin was  
23 Mr. Rosenwald. And it is in that letter that we looked at,  
24 and it is clear that he's threatening to sue everyone  
25 directly.

## SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT

10258

1 But everybody else never threatened to sue  
2 Retrophin. Ms. Hassan, as we said, never threatened to sue  
3 anybody. Mr. Geller didn't raise any threats to sue, or  
4 threats to go to the SEC, until after he had a signed  
5 settlement agreement, and the settlement agreement wasn't  
6 being paid.

7 Mr. Lavelle, there's an e-mail where he says I --  
8 Mr. Shkreli says, "Here's my counsel," and Mr. Lavelle says,  
9 "Why would I need counsel?" He wasn't threatening to sue at  
10 that point.

11 Mr. Marshall, as you heard, testified that he never  
12 threatened to sue. At some point he's frustrated with how  
13 long it's taking, and he says he wants a litigation hold, but  
14 he never directly threatened to sue. Mr. Kocher threatened to  
15 sue Mr. Shkreli and the MSMB funds, but never Retrophin  
16 directly. And Mr. Spielberg in an e-mail said that he would  
17 like to resolve it amicably, and never directly threatens to  
18 sue.

19 So I think it is important to kind of look at the  
20 record, because this idea that everybody was clamoring to sue  
21 Retrophin is not supported by the evidence. That said, even  
22 if they were, the defendant's actions are not consistent with  
23 the actions of a lawyer seeking to protect his client from  
24 people who are trying to sue him.

25 They are, in fact, consistent with what happened,

## SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT

10259

1 which is a conspiracy to take money and shares from Retrophin  
2 to pay back Mr. Shkreli's defrauded investors and to cover up  
3 what Mr. Shkreli had done.

4 And you would think that if Mr. Greebel, if the  
5 defendant was acting in the best interests of Retrophin, and  
6 was taking seriously legal threats and working to save the  
7 company, that he would have taken a number of steps, and none  
8 of those steps were actually taken.

9 So let's just look at how his behavior is actually  
10 inconsistent with working to protect Retrophin.

11 As you can see, this is the Marcum letter that was  
12 talked about during Sunil Jain's testimony. It's Government  
13 Exhibit 124-2. And this is a letter that was sent by Katten,  
14 the law firm, to Retrophin, in connection with the Marcum  
15 audit, on May 31, 2013. And it is talking about the audit  
16 date through December 31, 2012.

17 And in the letter, the defendant and Katten  
18 represent that Katten has not been engaged to represent the  
19 company with respect to overtly threatened or pending  
20 litigation that existed at the audit date, which is the  
21 December 31, 2012, or at any time from the audit date to the  
22 date of the letter, which is May 31, 2012.

23 And you can see that there are other sort of  
24 litigations discussed in this letter, so there's actually a  
25 little note here about two employees suing the company, which

## SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT

10260

1 was a reference to Jackson Su and George Huang for an amount  
2 of \$80,000. But there's no reference in here to any  
3 litigation threats. And at this point, on May 31, 2013,  
4 obviously, there had been a number of settlement agreements  
5 already executed. Schuyler Marshall had not yet received the  
6 settlement agreement, and we'll talk about the consulting  
7 agreements, but people like Alan Geller and Darren Blanton had  
8 not yet received the agreements. And so if this was really a  
9 concern about all these people suing Retrophin, that would  
10 have shown up in this letter.

11 Because what was the defendant doing, other than  
12 doing all of these settlement agreements and entering into all  
13 of these negotiations during this time period. And it is not  
14 in this letter as something that he's doing to prevent  
15 litigation against Retrophin. And yet much smaller  
16 litigations, \$80,000 for two disgruntled employees are in  
17 here, not the settlement agreements, which were for \$2.2  
18 million.

19 And you also know that the defendant wasn't acting  
20 to protect Retrophin because he never told anybody. And you  
21 would think that if a lawyer for the company had spent all of  
22 this time and energy and expended all of this money, \$2.2  
23 million, at a time when the company didn't have a lot of  
24 money, he would stand up and say, "Hey, guys. Look what I  
25 did. I protected the company. All these people were going to

## SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT

10261

1 sue, and I went out and made sure that didn't happen. And  
2 this is how I did it."

3 That doesn't happen. The defendant never tells  
4 anybody. As we know from the testimony of Steve Richardson  
5 and Steve Aselage, there was no litigation update between  
6 February 2013 and November 2013 in any of this time period  
7 when the settlement agreements were being done about  
8 threatened litigation, pending litigation, we resolved these  
9 threats, we paid this money, it was necessary to save  
10 Retrophin. It is not in board e-mails, it is not in agendas,  
11 it's not in the minutes. And we also know that when the  
12 settlement agreements were discussed, and we will get to that  
13 in a minute, they weren't discussed in the context of the  
14 litigation.

15 And there are a number of other steps the defendant  
16 didn't take, that if what he was doing was protecting  
17 Retrophin you would have seen. And that includes he didn't  
18 put in place a litigation hold. He didn't make sure that  
19 there weren't any documents that were going to be destroyed or  
20 potentially destroyed in connection with these settlement  
21 agreements. He didn't talk to anybody else at Retrophin who  
22 didn't have a conflict. You know, you can see the e-mails in  
23 that time period, where people like Mr. Shkreli, who obviously  
24 has a self-interest in getting these payments made, and  
25 Mr. Biestek, another coconspirator. But he's not talking to

## SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT

10262

1 board members. He's not talking to anybody else within  
2 Retrophin to determine whether or not these settlement  
3 agreements should be reached.

4 There's no evidence that there's any negotiation in  
5 connection with the settlement agreements on behalf of  
6 Retrophin. I mean, Spencer Spielberg gets paid without even a  
7 settlement agreement being in place. There's no release for  
8 Retrophin, there's no protection for Retrophin at that point.  
9 The money goes out the door, and they paper it later.

10 It's also really significant that the defendant does  
11 not tell anybody else at Katten. And we know that there were  
12 other Katten attorneys involved in other things, and we heard  
13 testimony from Mr. Cotton and Mr. Rosensaft. And you know  
14 that the defendant didn't tell Mr. Rosensaft or Mr. Cotton  
15 about these settlement agreements.

16 The defendant did not tell Mr. Rosensaft, in fact,  
17 that he was in contact with angry investors in this time  
18 period, at the very time period that the SEC investigation is  
19 going on, about those frauds. Mr. Rosensaft has no idea that  
20 Mr. Greebel is dealing with all of these investors at this  
21 exact time about their disputes with Mr. Shkreli.

22 And you would think that if the defendant was  
23 working in the best interest of Retrophin, he would let  
24 everybody know what had happened, and that this is all taken  
25 care of, and the investors are now satisfied. And he never

## SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT

10263

1 tells Mr. Rosensaft.

2 And Mr. Cotton testified that he didn't even know  
3 that there were MSMB investors who had threatened to sue  
4 Retrophin. And, remember, Mr. Cotton is a litigation partner.  
5 This is what Mr. Cotton does, he's involved in the Pierotti  
6 litigation, the Su litigation. And this is threatened  
7 litigation, Mr. Cotton has no idea that any of this has taken  
8 place.

9 The other way you know that this is inconsistent  
10 with concerns about litigation or imminent litigation threats  
11 is that there's lot of delay. And this is Mr. Shkreli's  
12 hallmark. You saw this when Mr. Blanton testified. It is put  
13 everybody off, put everybody off, you know, I don't want to  
14 deal with this. And so there's a lot of discussion about  
15 ignore people.

16 So, for example, Government Exhibit 546, you can  
17 ignore Sarah, which is a reference to Sarah Hassan, for now.

18 Government Exhibit 562 says Lavelle isn't going  
19 anywhere.

20 Government Exhibit 585, the defendant and  
21 Mr. Shkreli are discussing both David Geller and Alan Geller,  
22 and Mr. Shkreli says, Alan Geller is high maintenance. And  
23 the defendant says, how do you want to discuss the request,  
24 which are, again, these requests for payment. And Mr. Shkreli  
25 says, ignore.

## SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT

10264

1 And so there's a lot of delay for someone, you know,  
2 if the justification is that they were sort of litigation  
3 threats that had to be taken care of immediately, they just  
4 put people off until they need to deal with them.

5 And how else do you know that the defendant was not  
6 acting in the best interest of Retrophin, but, in fact, acting  
7 to defraud Retrophin? Well, he stood by while Mr. Shkreli  
8 continued to provide false information to investors. And he,  
9 in fact, provided information that wasn't true to investors in  
10 this time period.

11 So this is Government Exhibit 108-10. It is an  
12 e-mail exchange between Mr. Shkreli and Mr. Lavelle, who again  
13 was an MSMB Healthcare investor. And Mr. Greebel, the  
14 defendant, gets added at the top so he can see the whole  
15 chain. And you can see at the bottom that Mr. Shkreli tells  
16 Mr. Lavelle, "Unfortunately, you were virtually the only  
17 investor I am forwarding to our counsel." And Mr. Greebel  
18 eventually gets copied on this e-mail. And we know that's not  
19 true. We just went through all of the settlement agreements  
20 and everyone that the defendant was dealing with.

21 We also know that Mr. Greebel provided information  
22 that wasn't accurate and was highly misleading to the  
23 investors. This is Government Exhibit 572. It is an e-mail  
24 from the defendant to Mr. Spielberg, on April 30, 2013. And  
25 Mr. Spielberg is frustrated because the stock that he gets



## SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT

10265

1 through the settlement agreement is directly from Retrophin,  
2 and it's restricted. He can't trade it right away. And he  
3 thought he was going to get freely trading stock. And the  
4 defendant says the company has no way to give you unrestricted  
5 or free trading stock. And, again, this is April 30, 2013.  
6 And this is highly misleading because as a technical matter,  
7 that's true, if the company issued stock it would be  
8 restricted stock. But we know that the defendant and  
9 Mr. Shkreli was making freely tradeable stock available to  
10 other investors who wanted it by using Fearnow stock. And  
11 this is April 30, he does -- he talks about this a week later  
12 on May 7. In the context of the Kocher settlement agreement.  
13 They talk about where the 47,000 shares are coming from, the  
14 free trading shares, and the defendant says, "I assume it is  
15 coming out of the Fearnow stock." So he's telling  
16 Mr. Spielberg that they can't get him free trading shares, and  
17 then a week later they are talking about getting free trading  
18 shares for Mr. Kocher.

19 And then there's the conversation that the defendant  
20 had with David Geller in April of 2013. And, you know, at  
21 this point all of the evidence that the defendant has is that  
22 David Geller's money had been -- that was invested in MSMB  
23 Healthcare had not been treated properly, that Mr. Shkreli had  
24 done things wrong, that these frauds had been committed.

25 And we saw that both from all the information that

## SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT

10266

1 he had before this settlement agreements came in, and all the  
2 information he's getting from all of the other investors.

3 And then what does he tell David Geller in April of  
4 2013? David Geller says, "I thought, and I said it before, I  
5 was scammed." And then he was asked, "What, if anything, did  
6 Mr. Greebel say to you when you said that?" And David Geller  
7 said, "He said, he told me I wasn't, and Martin was working on  
8 a payment plan with me." So he's reassuring him that Martin  
9 is working on a payment plan, when, in fact, the money is  
10 going to come from Retrophin.

11 And it is clearly false because Mr. Shkreli wasn't  
12 paying any of these people back. He was taking the money and  
13 the shares from Retrophin. And you know that this is, you  
14 know, evidence of the defendant's intent to defraud because he  
15 is reassuring a defrauded investor on behalf of Mr. Shkreli  
16 when that's absolutely no reason to do so. And he's doing it,  
17 knowing that the money that's going to repay the investor is  
18 actually coming from the company.

19 The other reason you know that the defendant acted  
20 with intent to defraud is because knowing that these frauds  
21 had nothing to do with Retrophin, and knowing that Mr. Shkreli  
22 was the one who committed the frauds and who owed the money  
23 back, he took the money from Retrophin anyway. And he took  
24 it, knowing that Mr. Shkreli had the ability to pay these  
25 people back. And how do you know that? Because Mr. Shkreli

## SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT

10267

1 had 2.5 million in shares in Retrophin at this point. Not the  
2 Fearnow shares, which we will talk about later, but 2.5  
3 million of his own shares. And we saw that in the transfer  
4 records. This is Government Exhibit 115-1. We saw at the  
5 time of the reverse merger, on December 13, 2012, he had 2.5  
6 million shares, and that's also disclosed publicly in the 13D  
7 and other filings, and the defendant had access to that  
8 information.

9 And then we saw that on January 15, 2014, after all  
10 of the settlement agreements were signed, how many shares does  
11 Mr. Shkreli have? He still has that same 2.5 million shares.  
12 He did not take a single share of his own to pay for these  
13 settlement agreements, and the consulting agreements that we  
14 will see later. The shares that were taken were taken from  
15 Retrophin. And it is no answer to say that the people wanted  
16 free trading shares because some of the investors, including  
17 Lavelle and Spielberg, got restricted shares from Retrophin.  
18 There was absolutely no reason that Mr. Shkreli couldn't have  
19 used his own shares to pay back these investors that he  
20 defrauded. And, instead, the defendant worked to take those  
21 shares from Retrophin, knowing full well that the -- that  
22 Mr. Shkreli had them and just chose not to provide them.

23 Because even if these shares were restricted, and  
24 they were, they could have been transferred. And Ms. Merrill  
25 told you that. So just because they couldn't have been free

## SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT

10268

1 trading immediately, they could have been transferred to the  
2 investors.

3 We also know that the defendant knew that  
4 Mr. Shkreli had money. And we know this because of the  
5 records that went back and forth with Citrin Cooperman. So,  
6 for example, on March 31, 2013, there's a series of wire  
7 transfers that are discussed. And if you can remember, it was  
8 a spreadsheet, and then Mr. Shkreli put in his comments, and  
9 it was a spreadsheet of wires where Citrin Cooperman trying to  
10 figure out what was going on. And that spreadsheet included  
11 transfers of money to MSMB Healthcare and to Mr. Shkreli  
12 directly. And the transfer to Mr. Shkreli was \$575,000, which  
13 is Government Exhibit 113-17.

14 So, you know, he knows in March of 2013, that  
15 Mr. Shkreli is receiving \$575,000 from Retrophin. And what  
16 does he do? He has the company pay for these settlement  
17 agreements. So, for example, Sarah Hassan's settlement  
18 agreement was for \$400,000, the following month. Well,  
19 defendant knows that Mr. Shkreli has received money. He's not  
20 asking Mr. Shkreli to use his own money. He goes to Retrophin  
21 instead to get that money.

22 And there's also evidence that the settlement  
23 agreements themselves were concealed at the time. For  
24 example, in connection with the Rosenwald settlement, the  
25 defendant sends Mr. Shkreli an e-mail, when he sends the final

## SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT

10269

1 executed agreement, and says, "I wasn't sure who else knew  
2 about this agreement, so I didn't cc your assistants."

3           There's an e-mail earlier about the Spencer  
4 Spielberg agreement, where Mr. Shkreli sister said to the  
5 defendant and Mr. Shkreli, "I didn't think anybody else needed  
6 to know about this, these wires." And so there's all of this  
7 evidence at the time that suggests that these settlement  
8 agreements were being done for Mr. Shkreli's benefit so that  
9 he didn't have to pay them himself. Nobody was being told.

10           And then we get to the board. And we are jumping  
11 ahead a little bit in time. This is Government Exhibit 618.  
12 It is an e-mail that's sent in August of 2013, but it is a  
13 really, really important e-mail. And it is devastating  
14 evidence that the board had no idea about the settlement  
15 agreements at the time that they were being done.

16           Because you can see in August of 2013 that the  
17 defendant is telling Mr. Greebel there were serious faults  
18 with the agreements, including lack of board approval. And  
19 there's a whole chain of conversation that defendant writes  
20 back, and he doesn't say, "No, no, there was board approval,"  
21 "No, no, the board was told." This is a clear admission that  
22 the board never approved these agreements and was never told  
23 about these agreements.

24           And it is really important to keep in mind because  
25 this is August of 2013. We will talk about the restatement in

## SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT

10270

1 September of 2013, but this should color everything else that  
2 you see related to the board and what the board knew. Because  
3 the defendant and Shkreli know that they never brought this to  
4 the board for approval, they never told anybody.

5 And you know this, too, from the public filings.  
6 So, for example, there's the 2012 10-K, which is up here, in  
7 subsequent events section. And so in all the public filings  
8 that were made up until the point where Marcum makes the  
9 discovery, there's no mention of the settlement agreements.  
10 And here this is the subsequent events section and includes  
11 something like an agreement and employment agreement from May  
12 of 2013. But it doesn't include any of the settlement  
13 agreements that have been signed up until this point. And at  
14 this point, the defendant and Shkreli had already forced  
15 Retrophin to pay settlement agreements with Rosenwald, Hassan,  
16 Kocher, Spielberg, David Geller, and Lavelle. So this is,  
17 again, this is clear evidence that nobody was told of this as  
18 of the filing of the 2012 10-K, which is June 13, 2013.

19 So one document I want to talk about is the cash  
20 flow summary from the July 2, 2013 board meeting. And there's  
21 been a lot of discussion about this cash flow summary. And if  
22 you remember, the cash flow summary showed that at this point  
23 in time Retrophin was like really bleeding money, that they  
24 had raised \$10 million in the February PIPE, and it was kind  
25 of all going out the door.

## SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT

10271

1 And it includes a tiny line item that's called MSMB  
2 settlements, and it is blown up here. It references  
3 Spielberg, Hassan, and something called Trachtenberg & Rhodes,  
4 which is, as you remember from the testimony, the law firm  
5 that Kocher used. So it is referencing three of the  
6 settlements.

7 And there are a couple things to note here. First  
8 of all, all of the settlement, except for Marshall, had been  
9 signed at this point. Not all the money had gone out, so this  
10 doesn't necessarily even mention all of the settlements that  
11 had already been signed. In addition, there was no  
12 explanation, at the board meeting for what this was, no  
13 discussion of it. There were, as both Mr. Aselage and Richard  
14 testified, there were overlaps between MSMB and Retrophin.  
15 They both occupied the same space. They sometimes, you know,  
16 used similar vendors. And so there was this period of time  
17 where they were trying to figure out what did MSMB owe and  
18 what did Retrophin owe.

19 And so it wasn't unusual for there to be, you know,  
20 issues about what was MSMB's payment versus what was  
21 Retrophin's payment. And those discussions in the financials,  
22 and we will see that when we get to the restatement as well.  
23 But what Richardson and Aselage understood was that Retrophin  
24 would pay what it owed, and MSMB would pay what it owed. And  
25 so this was not necessarily clear to them what exactly these

## SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT

10272

1 MSMB settlements were. They certainly had no understanding  
2 that Retrophin was paying things for MSMB.

3 And we know from both Richardson and Aselage's  
4 testimony that they did not -- there was no discussion at this  
5 meeting of that particular line item. So this is Richardson  
6 testimony at 1866, that there was -- he had no understanding  
7 of the names in that line item, there was no discussion of it,  
8 and there was no litigation update given at this board  
9 meeting.

10 And the same is true for Mr. Aselage, at transcript  
11 4412. No discussion of who those people were, no idea who  
12 those people were, no litigation update. And the defendant  
13 didn't say anything. And, again, this is the July 2, 2013  
14 board meeting. If you are the lawyer for the company, and you  
15 have saved the company from, you know, going under because you  
16 have prevented these litigation threats, you say something.  
17 You explain, "Hey, guys, these are the settlements we entered  
18 into because I needed to do that to save the company." And it  
19 is never discussed. And that is a deliberate decision by the  
20 defendant not to provide that information.

21 And keep in mind, altogether, these settlement  
22 agreements are about \$2.2 million. That's how Marcum kind of  
23 analyzes them. And the \$2.2 million doesn't include the  
24 Rosenwald settlement. And that cash flow spreadsheet, the  
25 company had about \$10 million at that point. So you are



## SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT

10273

1 spending a fifth of the company's money to save the company,  
2 and you do not say anything about it ever.

3 And the other way that you know that the settlement  
4 agreements weren't disclosed is because it wouldn't have made  
5 any sense with what the board members had otherwise been told.  
6 So Mr. Aselage actually understood that the hedge funds had  
7 been successful because that's what Mr. Shkreli had said, and  
8 he didn't have the information that the defendant had about  
9 what had actually happened. And so he didn't have any idea  
10 that there would be unhappy investors looking to be repaid.

11 Mr. Richardson had been told that certain investors  
12 were unhappy not because their investments had been converted  
13 without their permission, but just that they weren't happy  
14 with the valuation. And he was told that that difference  
15 would be made up by Mr. Shkreli himself, that Mr. Shkreli  
16 would be providing those people with additional shares. And  
17 that is exactly, in fact, what people like Mr. Rosensaft  
18 thought, and we will get to that with Mr. Blanton because  
19 Mr. Rosensaft didn't know about any of the settlement  
20 agreements. But to the extent that he thought that people  
21 were getting additional shares, he thought they were coming  
22 from Mr. Shkreli.

23 And you know that the discussion about Mr. Shkreli  
24 providing his own shares to make people whole is something  
25 that Mr. Richardson understood because there are a number of

*SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT*

10274

1 e-mails where Mr. Shkreli is talking about providing his own  
2 shares to make Mr. Richardson whole.

3 So that's Government Exhibit 306, 244, and 248. And  
4 the defendant is copied on those. Mr. Shkreli is like, "I am  
5 going to enter into an options agreement. I am going to make  
6 you whole, Mr. Richardson."

7 So that's where we stand in July of 2013. All the  
8 information that the defendant has, what the defendant and  
9 Mr. Shkreli have done to take the money and shares from  
10 Retrophin, and what happens then is that Marcum discovers the  
11 settlement agreements.

12 Is this --

13 THE COURT: Yes. This might be a good time for the  
14 mid-morning break. Please don't talk about the case, and we  
15 will come retrieve you soon. Thank you.

16 (WHEREUPON, at 11:35 a.m., the jury exited the  
17 courtroom.)

18 (Continued on the next page.)  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25

PROCEEDINGS

10275

1 (Open court; no jury present.)

2 THE COURT: Have a seat everybody, or take a break.

3 MR. BRODSKY: I just have one thing to -- we have  
4 one item to raise. We are going to check the record. I  
5 believe that Ms. Smith mistakenly included in her summation  
6 something that was redacted from an e-mail. There was  
7 discussion with respect to one of the settlements. You may  
8 remember, Your Honor redacted a statement in an e-mail that  
9 Ms. Izerne had said to -- Leonora Izerne had said to  
10 Mr. Shkreli, or Mr. Greebel, "You are the only one who knows  
11 about this."

12 We'll check the record, but I believe Ms. Smith  
13 referred to that e-mail and included what had been redacted  
14 for the jury. So we want to check that. We didn't jump up  
15 and object. But we thought that was --

16 THE COURT: We will get it resolved.

17 MS. SMITH: Your Honor, for the record, there were  
18 actually two e-mails that discussed that Spencer Spielberg  
19 agreement. One of them Ms. Izerne said, "Mr. Shkreli said  
20 you're the only one who needs this information." That is the  
21 e-mail that didn't come in.

22 There was a second e-mail, which is the e-mail that  
23 was actually on the slide. And I am going to find it right  
24 now. And that is Government Exhibit 567, and that's the  
25 e-mail that I referred to. And Ms. Izerne says in that

PROCEEDINGS

10276

1 e-mail, "Nobody else needed this information as far as I  
2 know." And that was an e-mail to Mr. Biestek, Mr. Shkreli,  
3 and the defendant. And that is the e-mail to which I was  
4 referring, and that is the e-mail that's on the slide.

5 There was a second e-mail where Ms. Izerne said  
6 specifically, "Mr. Shkreli said nobody else needed this  
7 information," but this is the e-mail that actually came in.

8 THE COURT: All right. Thank you. Well, I am sure  
9 Mr. Brodsky will check.

10 MR. BRODSKY: Yes, we are going to check.

11 THE COURT: And if there's a discrepancy, we will  
12 figure out how to resolve it. Okay. Please take ten minutes.

13 (WHEREUPON, a recess was had at 11:38 a.m.)

14 (Continued on the next page.)  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25

Proceedings

10277

1 (In open court; outside the presence of the jury.)

2 THE COURT: Counsel, the plea I told you about that  
3 I thought I was going to try to reschedule, the parties have  
4 flown in from Singapore and they are here now. So I'm going  
5 to propose that we hear, I will hear the plea on Friday during  
6 the lunch hour. By then I think the jurors are likely to be  
7 deliberating, it shouldn't cause a disruption. If they are  
8 eating, hopefully they have won't come with a note at that  
9 time. I'll ask Ms. Jackson to speak to them.

10 I apologize to the parties who traveled here from  
11 Singapore that we weren't able to reach you in time to advise  
12 you of this problem. We did not anticipate, obviously, that  
13 the trial would still be ongoing. That is the reality.

14 So with apologies from The court, we'll reschedule  
15 you and hear you on Friday.

16 MR. BRODSKY: We had a chance to look at the  
17 transcript. While we disagree with Ms. Smith's interpretation  
18 of 567, I think it's an interpretation issue, I don't think  
19 it's referring to a redacted matter.

20 THE COURT: I want to remind Ms. Smith, I think I  
21 might have heard you at one point refer to the defendant when  
22 you were intending to refer to Mr. Shkreli. It's important to  
23 keep that distinction.

24 MS. SMITH: I will make sure I keep that in mind.

25 THE COURT: Maybe refer to Mr. Greebel or whatever

Summation - Ms. Smith

10278

1 you need to do to make sure that we don't hear the word  
2 defendant in reference to Mr. Greebel when in fact you're  
3 referring to Mr. Shkreli.

4 MS. SMITH: Yes.

5 THE COURT: I think that only happened once at the  
6 beginning.

7 MS. SMITH: Thank you.

8 THE COURT: Are we ready for the jury to come back?

9 MR. DUBIN: Yes, your Honor.

10 (Jury enters the courtroom at 11:55 a.m.)

11 THE COURT: All jurors are present. Please have a  
12 seat.

13 Ms. Smith, you may continue your summation.

14 MS. SMITH: So before the break we were talking  
15 about the settlement agreements themselves, how the  
16 defendant's actions were not consistent with acting in the  
17 best interest of Retrophin but consistent with what he  
18 actually did, which was work with Mr. Shkreli to commit a  
19 fraud by stealing money and shares from Retrophin.

20 When we broke we were talking about July of 2013.

21 In July of 2013 is when Marcum discovers the settlement  
22 agreements. What happens after Marcum discovers the  
23 settlement agreements is further evidence of the defendant's  
24 knowledge of and participation in the fraud scheme.

25 Let's talk about Sunil Jain's testimony. If you

Summation - Ms. Smith

10279

1 remember, Sunil Jain is one of the team that Marcum put  
2 together for the audit for Retrophin. He told you that the  
3 settlement agreement were discovered due to a variance  
4 analysis that was done in the quarter ending of June 2013. He  
5 explained what a variance analysis is, when the auditors are  
6 looking at the books of the company they do kind of a quick  
7 check and they look at how much cash is going out of the  
8 company in this quarter and they compare it to a similar  
9 quarter from earlier on. They look to see if there are any  
10 big differences. It's called a variance analysis. They did  
11 this analysis for the quarter ending June 2013.

12 And what happened was that they saw there was a  
13 \$2 million difference between what they had seen for a similar  
14 quarter and what they were seeing for the quarter June 2013.  
15 He described it as a significant difference that was not in  
16 general course of the business for a company like Retrophin.

17 So Marcum was doing this kind of test. They see  
18 this huge out flow of cash that is very different from how  
19 Retrophin was running the company in prior quarters. He said  
20 he needed to figure out why was there this difference. And he  
21 asked the comptroller, Mike Harrison, for Retrophin what is  
22 explaining the difference. And Mike Harrison said he didn't  
23 know. And then they had to go and ask Marc Panoff.

24 If you remember, Marc Panoff was hired in about May  
25 of 2013 to be the Chief Financial Officer for Retrophin.

Summation - Ms. Smith

10280

1 Prior to that they didn't have anyone internally who was  
2 handling the finances. You heard from Massella that Jackson  
3 Su was in that role prior to the merger, then Ron Tilles, then  
4 Marek Biestek. And Citrin was handling the books. They  
5 finally hired Marc Panoff.

6 Sunil Jain said they do this analysis, \$2 million  
7 out the door, they want to figure out what is going on. They  
8 ask the comptroller, he doesn't know. They ask Marc Panoff,  
9 it takes Marc Panoff a couple of days to get back to Sunil  
10 Jain and it turns out that there is the settlement agreements.  
11 And the settlement agreements had not previously been provided  
12 to Marcum, told to Marcum. We saw the litigation letter that  
13 was filed. They didn't know that there was a pending  
14 litigation. They didn't know there was settlement agreements  
15 because the defendant did not tell them in that letter.

16 You heard Sunil Jain say when they got the  
17 settlement agreements, which took a little while, Marcum  
18 determined that as an accounting matter they had to be  
19 disclosed. And they had to be disclosed because they were  
20 related-party transactions, because MSMB and Retrophin both  
21 had Mr. Shkreli as the overlap. There was an inherent  
22 conflict of interest in related-party transactions and they  
23 need to be disclosed no matter how much money they are. So  
24 even if it was a tiny, tiny transaction you need to disclose  
25 if there is a related party involved. In addition to that,



Summation - Ms. Smith

10281

1 Marcum determined that the transactions were, in fact,  
2 material to the company.

3 So that even if they hadn't been related-party  
4 transactions, they would have needed to be disclosed because  
5 it was so much money relative to how much money Retrophin had  
6 at the time.

7 So that's how Marcum comes across the settlement  
8 agreements. Not because they are brought to the attention by  
9 Marc Panoff or the defendant or Mr. Shkreli, but because they  
10 do this analysis they realize that something is off.

11 There is this period in which they are determining  
12 how exactly are they going to deal with disclosing these  
13 settlement agreements as an accounting matter. This is an  
14 e-mail conversation between Mr. Shkreli, Mr. Panoff and the  
15 defendant in August of 2013 after Marcum discusses discovering  
16 the settlement agreements. All of the SEC filings are delayed  
17 because they need to figure out how they are actually going to  
18 disclose these agreements in financials. So Marc Panoff is  
19 saying that the 10Q has been delayed. And Mr. Shkreli's  
20 response is to, "Fix the fucking issue. There is no issue.  
21 How many times do we have to talk about this." So you can see  
22 that Mr. Shkreli doesn't want to deal with this, doesn't want  
23 to have these settlement agreements disclosed. And there is  
24 more back and forth with the defendant that we'll get into in  
25 a minute. He doesn't want to hear about it. And he is

1 resistant to the idea of providing disclosure or statement  
2 relating to the settlement.

3 If you remember, Sunil Jain also testified that when  
4 there was a conversation with the defendant about the  
5 settlement agreements on the phone, the defendant also did not  
6 want to restate them. So Marcum discovers the settlement  
7 agreements, and what is the reaction of the defendant,  
8 Mr. Shkreli, there is no issue, nothing to see, nothing to  
9 restate.

10 As we know, Marcum ultimately insists because they  
11 are related-party transactions, they are material, they need  
12 to be in the SEC filings.

13 So what does the defendant do? The defendant drafts  
14 what is called a control memo, and this is Government's  
15 Exhibit 609-A, a really important document. It's an important  
16 document because it shows you that the defendant was  
17 committing fraud and not acting in the best interest of the  
18 company. You know that because the control memo itself admits  
19 as much as the defendant needs to admit to satisfy Marcum, it  
20 does not tell the whole story.

21 So what the control memo says is that in April and  
22 May of 2013 certain investors and funds affiliated with MSMB  
23 advise MSMB that they objected to the number and/or value of  
24 the shares of common stock in the company that they received  
25 as distribution from the funds. "The company, which is

Summation - Ms. Smith

10283

1 Retrophin, was advised of such investors' objections and the  
2 company, MSMB, its related funds, and such investors entered  
3 into settlement and release agreements in which the company  
4 and MSMB and its related funds agreed to make certain payments  
5 to such investors in consideration for a full release from  
6 such investors to MSMB, its related funds and the company for  
7 any claims any such investor has had or may have against the  
8 company MSMB and its related funds."

9           The control memo also says, again, this is drafted  
10 by the defendant then sent to Mr. Panoff then that is sent to  
11 Marcum, it says, "The objections raised by investors related  
12 solely to actions undertaken by MSMB and its related funds.  
13 The settlement and release agreements included a release by  
14 investors in favor of the company in order to prevent such  
15 investors from initiating a claim against the company."

16           What does the control memo say? First of all, it  
17 makes very clear that Retrophin has nothing to do with what  
18 the investors are complaining about. The objections raised by  
19 the investors related solely to actions undertaken by MSMB.  
20 This is something that the defendant has to admit at this  
21 point. Because it's clear that these have nothing to do with  
22 Retrophin. This is something that the defendant knew at the  
23 time that the settlement agreements were entered into, that  
24 Retrophin was not on the hook or not responsible for anything  
25 that the investors were complaining about. So when Marcum

Summation - Ms. Smith

10284

1 finds out, the defendant has to admit this. But what is not  
2 in this control memo is what is really important.

3 What is not in the control memo is that the  
4 investors aren't happy because Mr. Shkreli has committed a  
5 fraud. It has this language in here that the investors  
6 objected to the number or value of the shares of common stock  
7 that they received. It doesn't explain that they weren't  
8 suppose to receive, in the case of MSMB Capital, shares of  
9 common stock in Retrophin. They were supposed to get their  
10 cash back or their shares or shares in Retrophin, if they  
11 chose. It doesn't say anything about the fact that the  
12 investors investments were converted by Mr. Shkreli against  
13 their will. And it doesn't explain the underlying fraud that  
14 Mr. Shkreli committed. It's a very, very important omission.

15 Because this on its face doesn't actually explain  
16 what happened and make it clear not only that it's not  
17 Retrophin's obligation but these payments were made to cover  
18 up a fraud.

19 Then the next thing the defendant does, not only  
20 does he draft this control memo that kind of tells as much of  
21 the story that he needs to tell to cover himself but not the  
22 whole story, he drafts promissory notes and indemnification  
23 agreements, 689, so these are basically notes that say that  
24 MSMB will pay back the money for the settlement agreements.  
25 That they will do it in the amounts that they, Retrophin,

1 outlaid. And they are dated as of the settlement agreements,  
2 so it's basically an agreement to have MSMB paid back. This  
3 is itself another affirmative lie that the defendant tells.

4 Again, at this point, this is August of 2013,  
5 defendant knows that the MSMB entities haven't had any money  
6 since December 2012. That's the whole reason that Retrophin  
7 was used as a piggy bank for Mr. Shkreli in the first place.  
8 So this is just papering over something that is never going to  
9 happen. The defendant knows that Mr. Shkreli is never going  
10 to pay these back. He had shares and money himself that he  
11 didn't use. They were taken from Retrophin and MSMB has no  
12 more money. And this is just designed to make the auditors  
13 happy that someone is going to pay this back. Retrophin  
14 wasn't supposed to pay the money, but don't worry, we have  
15 this piece of paper that says Retrophin is going to get the  
16 money back. You know this is just a way to paper over what  
17 happened because of the conversations that the defendant and  
18 Mr. Shkreli had about the indemnification agreements.

19 Let's look at Government's Exhibit 618, this is the  
20 e-mail we looked at originally, on the bottom, August 23,  
21 where Mr. Shkreli says, there were serious problems with the  
22 agreements including lack of Board approval. The defendant  
23 responds on August 23, 2013, his response is really  
24 significant. Because what Mr. Shkreli is saying, serious  
25 issues with the Board not approving the agreements, maybe we

Summation - Ms. Smith

10286

1 should just redo the agreements, we'll just redate them we'll  
2 cancel them, we'll create new agreements right now. And the  
3 defendant responds, "that will open up some very big issues."

4 The current thinking is, let Retrophin pay, get a  
5 note from the fund, and if the fund can't fulfill the note  
6 Retrophin will write it off as bad debt. It would be easier  
7 than the road you were referring to. Also Marcum will get  
8 very spooked with what you were talking about, which could  
9 spook your investors. The defendant writes back, I'm  
10 currently thinking that works for me.

11 What is this conversation about? This is the  
12 defendant telling Mr. Shkreli we'll do it this way, we'll get  
13 the notes, you'll never pay it back, and they'll write it off  
14 as bad debt.

15 How do we know that the defendant knew that this was  
16 going to work? Well, it happened before. If you remember  
17 when Mr. Massella testified, there was the issue with the  
18 Katten bills. And Retrophin, while paying \$600,000 more to  
19 Katten than there were invoices for. There was a whole  
20 conversation where Mr. Massella was asking the defendant why  
21 is there \$600,000 difference, the defendant wouldn't answer,  
22 wouldn't give him an explanation. We saw the e-mail from  
23 Mr. Massella to his colleague where he says, you know, Evan  
24 won't tell me why and it must be for the MSMB funds.

25 Then we heard testimony from Mr. Jain that the

Summation - Ms. Smith

10287

1 \$600,000 was for MSMB bills, and that it got written off as  
2 bad debt. Retrophin paid for the Katten bills for MSMB. MSMB  
3 couldn't repay and they wrote it off as bad debt. Retrophin  
4 paid. They never get repaid. Put it as a line item for  
5 Retrophin. That had already happened by this point.

6 When the defendant is telling Mr. Shkreli, we'll get  
7 some notes then just write it off as bad debt, he's saying  
8 you're never going to have to repay this, this is just  
9 papering this, don't worry about it, Retrophin will still have  
10 to pay you're not going to have to.

11 There a series of e-mails, starting with  
12 Government's Exhibit 619 where you can see Mr. Panoff's role  
13 in this. Mr. Panoff comes into this later in the process.  
14 And he expressed discomfort with what is going on at different  
15 points. Then he is convinced to go along. He agrees, and you  
16 can see in the e-mails, then the acts he takes afterwards not  
17 to provide any additional information to the Board and to go  
18 along with this scheme to make it look like they are complying  
19 with what Marcum asked for and the restatement that is going  
20 to be done is all above Board and that there are aren't any  
21 issues.

22 If you can see in this e-mail on August 26, someone  
23 for Schuyler Marshall, I believe Schuyler Marshall said that  
24 was his administrative assistant, is sending wiring  
25 instructions to the defendant because -- to Martin Shkreli --

Summation - Ms. Smith

10288

1 because Marshall wants to get his settlement agreement paid.

2 At this point he has kind of an agreement in  
3 principle but doesn't have the actual agreement. He's putting  
4 pressure on Mr. Shkreli to pay out. Mr. Shkreli says,  
5 "getting pressure do we have a solution?" He's talking to  
6 Mr. Panoff. Mr. Panoff then says to Mr. Greebel, "Waiting to  
7 hear back from Marcum this morning. The fact that we keep  
8 changing our story to them doesn't help." This is Mr. Panoff  
9 expressing concern that what information Marcum is getting  
10 isn't necessarily consistent. He's concerned about how this  
11 the settlement agreement issue is being handled.

12 Then if we look at Government's Exhibit 621, the  
13 same day, in response to a follow up e-mail in the same chain,  
14 Mr. Panoff says, "I think this is a little too much for my  
15 risk tolerance. I was told that MSMB was going to handle  
16 these outstanding settlements prior to the financing, a  
17 reference to the pipe, we are changing our story. If you're  
18 going to force me to pay through Retrophin, I'm going to have  
19 to ask the Board for guidance or resign. This is not  
20 something I'm comfortable deciding on an island. The issue  
21 has caused me tremendous amount of stress and sleepless  
22 nights. It is affecting my personal life and it is not worth  
23 it for me to continue to operate this way."

24 This is right in the time period where they are  
25 discussing the promissory notes, the indemnifications, and



Summation - Ms. Smith

10289

1 Mr. Panoff's expression of concern is the same expression that  
2 MSMB was going to pay, and now everything is paid through  
3 Retrophin and we're just getting these notes. This is a clear  
4 expression of what is wrong with what the defendant and  
5 Mr. Shkreli were doing. What happened afterwards, however, is  
6 that Mr. Panoff agrees to go along.

7 You can see that because we get to the Board  
8 meeting. Mr. Panoff doesn't list any of the concerns listed  
9 in the e-mails here, in fact, he agrees with the defendant to  
10 represent that Mr. Shkreli will in fact repay the notes.  
11 That's Government's Exhibit 627.

12 This is an exhibit where the defendant is drafting  
13 for Mr. Panoff a response to Marcum, because Marcum wants to  
14 know if we've got the notes how are they going to get repaid.  
15 So Mr. Greebel drafts this e-mail and says that, "MSMB has  
16 advised us that it has received assurances from its managing  
17 member that it will have the resources to pay the obligations  
18 set forth in the notes and the indemnification agreements.  
19 MSMB has advised us that the managing member provided  
20 documentation demonstrating that it owns securities with an  
21 estimated value in excess of \$8 million." This is legalese  
22 speak. This is the defendant kind of putting on paper what is  
23 going on in a way that is very hard to understand.

24 The managing member of MSMB for both MSMB Capital  
25 and MSMB Healthcare is Mr. Shkreli. What Mr. Shkreli has is

Summation - Ms. Smith

10290

1 the 2.5 million shares of Retrophin stock. So what the  
2 defendant is proposing is that Mr. Shkreli can repay these  
3 notes with those 2.5 million shares. We know you know that  
4 the defendant is not being truthful here. He had those  
5 2.5 million shares to begin with, he didn't use them. He's  
6 not planning to use any of them. They talk about how it's  
7 going to be written off as bad debt.

8 So this is just another way in which the defendant  
9 is operating behind the scenes, drafting it for Mr. Panoff who  
10 will send it to Marcum to kind of grease the wheels, get the  
11 paperwork done, to satisfy the accountants make sure that they  
12 don't actually have to repay the money and to cover up the  
13 reason that the payments were taken from Retrophin. It's  
14 purposely misleading.

15 So at the end of the Marcum story, after Marcum  
16 discovers everything, they ultimately include five settlement  
17 agreements in which they put in the SEC filings. That's the  
18 Spielberg, Hassan, Kocher, Geller and Lavelle settlement  
19 agreements. They do not include the Rosenwald agreement  
20 because no one ever tells them about the Rosenwald settlement  
21 agreement because it was paid entirely with Fearnow shares.  
22 Again, you can see the calculation is for these five, not the  
23 Rosenwald, it's \$2.2 million.

24 What is really significant about this is two things.  
25 One, is that we heard Sunil Jain testify that he is not in the

Summation - Ms. Smith

10291

1 process, the business of detecting fraud. His job was to  
2 figure out, okay, there is \$2 million that went out, what  
3 happens, what is the impact on the accounting. So this whole  
4 exercise with Marcum is to determine how do we account for it.  
5 It is not a question of whether or not those payments should  
6 have been made in the first place. And we know that that is  
7 something the defendant was aware of, because of the way in  
8 which he drafted that control memo, which doesn't actually get  
9 to the true purpose of what the agreements were for but it  
10 provides just enough information to classify these party  
11 transactions, figure out how they, including the SEC filings,  
12 with as little information as possible, as little of the story  
13 as possible, and figure out how to have the least impact and  
14 to create the least notice for what happened.

15           Again, this is consistent with committing a fraud  
16 and inconsistent with protecting Retrophin. Because if this  
17 had been something done to protect Retrophin, first of all,  
18 they would have talked about it much sooner than this. Second  
19 of all, they would have explained what happened. Instead of  
20 this whole kind of control memo saying some people weren't  
21 happy, not explaining the full story, making sure that Marcum  
22 has just enough information but not too much information at  
23 different points in the process.

24           What is also significant, the second thing, is what  
25 happens next with Schuyler Marshall's settlement agreement.

Summation - Ms. Smith

10292

1 Before Marcum discovered the settlement agreements, all of  
2 them had been done, not all of them had been paid but all of  
3 them had been finalized except for Schuyler Marshall. He had  
4 gotten a draft, but he hadn't actually gotten the agreement.  
5 You can see that Mr. Shkreli and the defendant discussed how  
6 to handle Schuyler Marshall because his agreement hasn't been  
7 signed and the money hasn't gone out the door. Now they have  
8 the control memo they have to deal with, which says if they  
9 are going to do something like this in the future they need to  
10 make sure that they follow certain procedures.

11 So this is an e-mail, Government's Exhibit 611,  
12 between the defendant and Mr. Shkreli talking about how to  
13 handle the Schuyler Marshall agreement given the new approach,  
14 which is the control memo, and the fact that Marcum now knows  
15 about the settlement agreements. So what the defendant winds  
16 up doing is taking the Marshall settlement agreement, he was  
17 owed \$300,000 and then 6300 shares. So he takes the  
18 settlement agreement that he originally drafted, and splits it  
19 into two. Now there are two settlement agreements, one is for  
20 the cash and one is for the shares, that's Government's  
21 Exhibits 57B and 57A.

22 The agreement for the cash is just between Schuyler  
23 Marshall and Retrophin for \$300,000. And the agreement for  
24 the shares is just between Schuyler Marshall and then Martin  
25 Shkreli and the MSMB entities, that's just for the shares. So

Summation - Ms. Smith

10293

1 you can see the two agreements here. You can see that one is  
2 for the shares and one is for the cash. Then you also see  
3 that the way the releases worked is that the agreement for  
4 cash just released Retrophin; and the agreement for shares  
5 just released Martin Shkreli and the MSMB entities. So what  
6 winds up happening is that Mr. Marshall gets these two  
7 separate agreements instead of one agreement, one with  
8 Retrophin one with MSMB entities and Martin Shkreli.

9 And this is really, really important because the  
10 agreement that is with Retrophin that gets signed after the  
11 control memo is a straight up fact of money from Retrophin.  
12 Because the defendant already admitted that the complaint that  
13 Mr. Marshall had, to the extent he had complaints, had nothing  
14 to do with Retrophin, that's in the control memo. Retrophin  
15 isn't responsible for making any of these payments. And by  
16 putting them in two different agreements, one with just  
17 Retrophin, they don't have to follow the extra procedures set  
18 out in the control memo. It makes it look like the agreement  
19 with Retrophin was with Retrophin, and they don't disclose the  
20 separate agreement for shares.

21 So this is after everything that has happened,  
22 Marcum has discovered it. He said these agreements had  
23 nothing to do with Retrophin, yet he goes ahead and creates a  
24 agreement solely between Retrophin and Schuyler Marshall and  
25 has Retrophin paid \$300,000 in connection with that agreement.

1           What happened won't surprise you, but the separate  
2 agreement for shares never gets paid. So when it's an  
3 agreement that Mr. Shkreli has to pay himself or the MSMB  
4 entities, they never actually deliver the 6300 shares, but  
5 they make sure that Retrophin pays the \$300,000.

6           You can see that here in the final Marcum document,  
7 which is Defense Exhibit 118-46. The final agreement for  
8 Schuyler Marshall is listed as just with Retrophin, not with  
9 MSMB. And there is no separate agreement with Schuyler  
10 Marshall for shares. We'll circle back, just keep in mind  
11 that Schuyler Marshall never gets paid those shares.

12           This agreement is slipped in right before the  
13 September 9, 2013 Board meeting. We'll see, as we go through,  
14 it's not actually made known in any kind of SEC filings later  
15 on. So they do this one under-the-wire, the control memo  
16 comes in. They agreed to pay Marshall. They make it just  
17 Retrophin even though at this point it is clear that's totally  
18 improper and it also won't surprise you there is no  
19 indemnification note that is made for the Schuyler Marshall  
20 settlement agreement because they disguised it as purely a  
21 payment from Retrophin. Mr. Shkreli doesn't bother papering  
22 it with an indemnification note and pretending that is ever  
23 going to be paid back, the money is just taken from Retrophin.  
24 All of this is done before we get to the September 9, 2013,  
25 Board meeting.

1           It's really important to keep in mind what happens  
2 at the Board meeting, what the discussion is actually about  
3 and how the settlement agreements are kind of presented. It's  
4 presented as an accounting issue, as you heard both from  
5 Richardson and Aselage. It's a restatement, there was  
6 something wrong with our accounting, we need to restate, we  
7 need to readjust the accounting, we need to explain why we're  
8 adjusting the accounting. It was a discussion that was had at  
9 a very, high level with Marcum. They walked through the  
10 auditor letter, which we'll see.

11           And there is no discussion ever of the SEC  
12 investigation, Martin Shkreli's hedge fund frauds, the fact  
13 that the MSMB investors are unhappy because of the way that  
14 their investments were converted into Retrophin without their  
15 permission. There is no specific discussion of a litigation  
16 update. There is none of that information that, again, you  
17 would hear if this was all above board.

18           The reason the defendant and Mr. Shkreli do not  
19 provide this information at the Board meeting is because they  
20 don't want anyone to know what they do. They don't want them  
21 to fully understand it. You will see from the language that  
22 gets put in the SEC filings, that nobody really understands  
23 what happened. It is, again, just enough to satisfy Marcum,  
24 just enough to get them over the line and get the restatements  
25 done, and not the full story of what happens.

Summation - Ms. Smith

10296

1           There is a reason. That's because they committed a  
2 fraud by taking money and shares from Retrophin. So if you  
3 look at Mr. Richardson's testimony about that September Board  
4 meeting, if you remember, he had that conversation with  
5 Mr. Panoff over the summer where Mr. Panoff was again  
6 explaining that there were some things like rent, where MSMB  
7 and Retrophin had shares and they need to know who owed what.  
8 Mr. Panoff never told him that Retrophin was paying for MSMB.  
9 So the restatement was kind of put in the context we're  
10 straightening out who has to pay for what, that's what the  
11 restatement is about. Mr. Aselage had similar testimony.

12           The other thing that Mr. Richardson told you about  
13 that Board call was about the indemnification notes, the  
14 promissory notes and the indemnification notes.

15           If you remember, he said that Mr. Shkreli was very  
16 kind of strong on that call. He said, "I don't know why we're  
17 talking about this. I'm standing by the notes. I'll repay  
18 them." That was something that he said on the call. That's  
19 also really important because, again, the defendant knows  
20 that's not true, Mr. Shkreli knows that's not true. If he  
21 wanted to pay the settlement agreements, he would have done  
22 it. They just did the Marshall settlement agreement that they  
23 took money from Retrophin, he had no intention of paying any  
24 of these back. He makes that point on the call. Again, it's  
25 not clear what the settlement agreements are for, but he's



Summation - Ms. Smith

10297

1 saying things are straightened out, what needs to be paid,  
2 there is nothing for anybody to worry about.

3 Again, it's really important to think about what was  
4 not said on that call, in addition to what Mr. Shkreli just,  
5 what was just described as Mr. Shkreli's representations.  
6 There is no disclosure that the settlement agreements were  
7 repaid, Capital and Healthcare investment shares taken from  
8 Retrophin. There is no disclosure that the settlement  
9 agreements, MSMB Capital and MSMB Healthcare management  
10 investors, because their investments had been converted with  
11 Retrophin without their permission. If you remember,  
12 Mr. Richardson thought everybody who did it had been like him  
13 and said I want Retrophin stock; when in fact, that wasn't  
14 true. People like Mr. Kocher and Ms. Hassan had wanted the  
15 cash back.

16 Again, they weren't presented as part of a  
17 litigation update. There was no discussion of how these  
18 settlements were necessary to save the company or  
19 indemnification.

20 The agreements themselves were never provided to the  
21 Board. Again, this is the testimony that where Mr. Shkreli  
22 insisted that the indemnification would be repaid.

23 Mr. Richardson testified that Mr. Shkreli jumped in,  
24 verbally quite forcefully when the subject of the agreements  
25 came up saying, this has been discussed a number of times.

Summation - Ms. Smith

10298

1 You know MSMB. I'm standing by the promissory note that was  
2 referenced in there. Why is this being discussed and brought  
3 up again. It was a forceful interaction.

4 The last thing to remember about Mr. Richardson is,  
5 again, he did understand that there were some MSMB investors  
6 who wanted more shares, but his understanding was those shares  
7 were coming from Mr. Shkreli, just like Mr. Shkreli was going  
8 to provide him with more shares for his MSMB Healthcare  
9 management. So there was never any understanding that any  
10 agreements or resolutions would involve money or shares coming  
11 from the company or that money or shares had come from the  
12 company.

13 So let's just look again at the audit letter that  
14 goes around to the Board and then discussed at a high level at  
15 the September meeting. I know that this language has been  
16 read into the record by a whole bunch of witnesses, I'm not  
17 going to reread it. But if you look at it, it doesn't say any  
18 of the key information that we've been talking about. It  
19 doesn't provide any information about who got the settlements,  
20 what the purpose was, that there were money shares taken from  
21 Retrophin to repay defrauded investors. It is just this kind  
22 of bland language that didn't give the Board any information  
23 about what had really happened. Again, just enough to satisfy  
24 the accountants, just enough to deal with the restatements,  
25 not the story of what happened.

Summation - Ms. Smith

10299

1           That language from that audit letter is then stuck  
2 into all sorts of SEC filings. Defense made a big deal out of  
3 this. There were a bunch of different filings, a 10Q every  
4 quarter, then a 10K, the S1, which is what happens when you're  
5 going to issue shares. There are all sorts of SEC filings  
6 that a public company has to pay. These paragraphs get stuck  
7 into every SEC filing going forward for however many months,  
8 but the same language. It's the exact same language, for the  
9 most part, we'll get to that in a minute. The same kind of  
10 bland language that doesn't provide any information. It  
11 doesn't matter if it's in there a hundred times, it is doesn't  
12 actually tell the Board what happened.

13           You'll notice that the September letter also doesn't  
14 include the Marshall agreement, which had been done in August.  
15 And it doesn't include the Rosenwald agreement, which never  
16 gets disclosed. The Marcum audit letter for November does  
17 include the second, the last agreement, the Marshall  
18 agreement, for 300,000. But it doesn't explain that this one  
19 was done later in connection with the control memo that there  
20 was absolutely no reason for Retrophin to pay this. And it  
21 doesn't mention the separate shares of Mr. Shkreli and MSMB.

22           Then again, you can see how the language makes its  
23 way into all the filings; once you have something like this,  
24 it needs to be put in all the subsequent filings. There is a  
25 filing that happened a little bit later, December 2013, that

Summation - Ms. Smith

10300

1 has a little bit more information. This is the S1 for  
2 December 2013. This has the more information. It has who the  
3 actual related parties are, the MSMB entities, instead of  
4 saying related party. Though that information was also  
5 included in the Marcum letter. When Mr. Shkreli was jumping  
6 in saying, I'm MSMB, that information had already been  
7 provided.

8           This filing has one additional kind of sentence that  
9 wasn't in the prior filings. That actually contains fulsome  
10 information and was never specifically discussed with the  
11 Board. So a lot of tiny print there, but it talks about they  
12 entered into a series of agreements, and this is the sixth  
13 line down, owed to certain investors in the MSMB entities  
14 which had invested in the company and objected to the number  
15 of shares of common stock in the company that they received as  
16 a distribution from such funds. So again, that's not language  
17 that was in the Marcum letters. It wasn't any language that  
18 was discussed with the Board, but at the end of the day it's  
19 the same kind of false information that was in the control  
20 memo. It doesn't actually say why the investors weren't  
21 happy. And more importantly, it says that the funds, which  
22 include both MSMB Health Care and MSMB Capital, invested in  
23 Retrophin. We know that the MSMB Capital never invested in  
24 Retrophin. So this additional language doesn't provide any  
25 other information that let's you know the fraud occurred, in

Summation - Ms. Smith

10301

1 fact, it provides false information about MSMB Capital's  
2 investment into Retrophin.

3 So that's the settlement agreements. And for Count  
4 One you know that there are also consulting agreements. The  
5 defendant and Mr. Shkreli did not just defraud Retrophin  
6 through the settlement agreements, but also through consulting  
7 agreements which were used as a vehicle to provide defrauded  
8 MSMB investors with large amounts of shares.

9 There are two agreements at issue in this case. The  
10 agreement for Al Geller and the agreement for Darren Blanton,  
11 both of who you heard of. You also heard testimony during the  
12 defense case from an individual Steven Rosenfeld, who also  
13 received a consulting agreement. Who, the Judge will instruct  
14 you, his agreement is not part of the charged conspiracy in  
15 Count One.

16 So what I want to focus on are the two agreements  
17 that are charged in the conspiracy, Al Geller and Darren  
18 Blanton.

19 Let's start with Al Geller. Just quick background,  
20 he was an MSMB Healthcare investor who invested \$1 million in  
21 the fund. He was unhappy with the number of shares he  
22 received. If you remember he was the outlier. He was the  
23 one investor, like Mr. Richardson, who said he was fine with  
24 getting Retrophin shares. He just wasn't happy with how many  
25 he got. He never threatened to sue. Then, significantly, he

Summation - Ms. Smith

10302

1 never discussed providing the consulting services with  
2 Mr. Shkreli or anyone at Retrophin. And it was the defendant  
3 and Mr. Shkreli who proposed a consulting agreement to him in  
4 order to resolve this dispute. So let's just walk through his  
5 story.

6 We can start with Government's Exhibit 560, which is  
7 where the defendant drafts an e-mail to Alan Geller for  
8 Mr. Shkreli. This is another example of what I talked about  
9 at the beginning, Mr. Greebel's role in the background. He  
10 was behind the scenes. The reason a lot of people didn't have  
11 contact with him is he's operating back here, making  
12 everything happen. Mr. Shkreli is out front, dealing with  
13 people.

14 So the defendant drafts an e-mail for Mr. Shkreli to  
15 send to Al Geller. April 2013 e-mail is, "Hi Al, would you be  
16 willing to sign a consulting agreement in connection with the  
17 issuance of 31,500 shares to you? It would be the quickest  
18 way to the get the stock issued to you and satisfy any  
19 requests that the transfer agent may have. If so, I'll have  
20 Evan prepare something for you."

21 That language is something to keep in mind. It says  
22 the quickest way to the get the stock issued to you and  
23 satisfy any request the transfer agent may have. You remember  
24 from de Morrell's testimony, in order for the company to issue  
25 shares they need authorization. So they need a Board

Summation - Ms. Smith

10303

1 resolution or someone to tell them why, who at the company  
2 approved getting shares. So if you had a consulting agreement  
3 you can go to the transfer agent and say, hey, this person got  
4 a consulting agreements, give them shares. What the defendant  
5 is saying here is the consulting agreement is a way to get  
6 shares out of the company. It's something I can show the  
7 transfer agent to get the shares. Drafting this e-mail for  
8 Mr. Shkreli, this is the quickest way to get it done.

9           You can see Mr. Geller's response, Government  
10 Exhibit 105-7, his response is, "What does that mean? What  
11 are the ramifications of that?" It's very clear from this  
12 response, and we'll see his testimony in a minute, it never  
13 occurred that the consulting agreement or being a consultant,  
14 he doesn't know what Mr. Shkreli is talking about in this  
15 e-mail that the defendant drafted.

16           Then the defendant himself follows up with  
17 Mr. Geller saying that, "Martin for forwarded me your e-mail.  
18 Are you available for a quick call." So the defendant and  
19 Alan Geller have a conversation. And before the conversation,  
20 Alan Geller told you when he came to testify, that prior to  
21 getting that e-mail that the defendant had drafted he had  
22 never discussed a consulting agreement, he never acted as a  
23 consultant, he never discussed with anybody, he never had  
24 consulting agreements before that's, in the transcript 6737.

25           Then if you remember, the defendant had a similar

Summation - Ms. Smith

10304

1 conversation with Al Geller as he had with David Geller. With  
2 Al Geller also at this point hasn't gotten his money from the  
3 MSMB investment, didn't have an understanding how many shares  
4 he had, felt like he was getting scammed. He was trying to  
5 probe the defendant for information. And the defendant said  
6 in this response he was, he, the defendant -- excuse me, the  
7 defendant said in response to Al Geller's questions, that he  
8 was reassuring, don't worry about it, Martin Shkreli is a good  
9 guy, it's not that at all, it's not a scam. And he made Al  
10 Geller feel better. So this is again the defendant working on  
11 behalf of Mr. Shkreli to appease these angry investors to tell  
12 them don't worry about it, we're going to take care of you,  
13 I'm going to help you get this resolved.

14 He also reassured Mr. Geller that a consulting  
15 agreements could be used to resolve his dispute. He said the  
16 defendant said it's a common type of thing, making him feel  
17 like it was fine, just a way of getting something done.

18 If you remember, Al Geller also had a conversation  
19 with Kevin Mulleady along the same lines, that this is fine,  
20 we'll just use a consulting agreement, we'll take care of it  
21 this way. And Al Geller said that between Kevin Mulleady and  
22 the defendant he felt comforted that it was okay to use a  
23 consulting agreement.

24 If you remember, after speaking to the defendant on  
25 the call itself and after the call he never had a



Summation - Ms. Smith

10305

1 conversation, Al Geller, never had a conversation with the  
2 defendant or Mr. Shkreli about any actual services that he  
3 would provide. You remember Al Geller owned a series of  
4 thrift shops. That's his job. He told you that he didn't  
5 have any specific information about drug companies. And at  
6 one point was asked, did you know a strategic and corporate  
7 governance, which is the language in the consulting agreement,  
8 he said something about taking a guess at what that meant.

9 This was a consulting agreement that was designed to  
10 do exactly what the defendant says, to get shares out of  
11 Retrophin to Al Geller, to settle this dispute. There was  
12 never a discussion of consulting services. There was never an  
13 intention to do consulting services. It was a document to get  
14 him the shares that he needed from Retrophin.

15 If you remember, after this conversation that he had  
16 with the defendant in April, all through the summer while  
17 David Geller is getting his settlement agreement, Al Geller is  
18 discussing and nudging the defendant and Mr. Shkreli where is  
19 my agreement, where is my agreement. In any of those  
20 agreements there is no discussion of consulting. We know that  
21 the Al Geller consulting agreement that ultimately gets signed  
22 was never actually approved by the Board. Both were members,  
23 it was never discussed at Board. And both Board members were  
24 never told that Al Geller was an MSMB Healthcare investor  
25 seeking for repayment.

Summation - Ms. Smith

10306

1           You know that the draft Al Geller consulting  
2 agreement that was attached to the Board meeting minutes --  
3 the Board meeting e-mail that went around that consulting  
4 agreement on its face, which is similar to the final  
5 consulting agreement, doesn't say that he's an MSMB Healthcare  
6 investor looking to get repaid. It says he's a consultant who  
7 is going to provide strategic and corporate governance.

8           Now there is an e-mail, which is Government's  
9 Exhibit 105-48, in September of 2013, actually dated  
10 September 10, 2013, right after the September 9 Board meeting,  
11 where the defendant represents to Al Geller that the Board has  
12 in fact approved his consulting agreement. This is again  
13 despite the testimony from Aselage that he has no memory of  
14 discussing the Al Geller agreement. And despite the testimony  
15 from Steven Richardson that he knew that they didn't get to  
16 that line item because it was a consulting agreement for Al  
17 Geller and he knew Ken Banta. He remembered they did not  
18 actually discuss those consulting agreements at the meeting.

19           In this e-mail the defendant says to Al Geller,  
20 "Would the Board approve the agreement and request that I add  
21 provided services and when reasonably requested but not in  
22 excess of 20 percent of your time." During Mr. Richardson's  
23 testimony he actually asked about Board agenda on which he had  
24 taken notes, Defense Exhibit 8281. If you see the agenda,  
25 number nine, was about approving Al Geller and Ken Banta,

Summation - Ms. Smith

10307

1 Richardson testified he never got to it. He also testified  
2 that his notes on the Board agenda where it says, minimum time  
3 expectation depression. That when he had gotten those drafts  
4 right before the Board meeting e-mail, had a couple of minutes  
5 to look at them, he wanted to make sure when they talked about  
6 the consulting agreements. They talked about the minimal  
7 amount of time that the consultants to serve to make sure that  
8 they would be worth what Retrophin would be paying him.

9 (Continued following page.)

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

Summation - Ms. Smith

10308

1 BY MS. SMITH:

2 And he was asked specifically on cross-examination,  
3 didn't the Board say no more than, no more than 20 percent,  
4 maximum 20 percent? And he said, No. Before the meeting, I  
5 wanted to make sure there was a minimum time, not a maximum  
6 time. So the defendant's statement to Al Geller that the  
7 Board had approved that they wanted a maximum time are  
8 inconsistent with Richardson's testimony and what actually  
9 happened. Again, the agreement was not discussed and what  
10 Richardson would have wanted was a minimum time, not a  
11 maximum time. And you also know in the context of the  
12 Al Geller agreement that the Board never gave blanket  
13 approval to Mr. Shkreli or anybody else to enter into  
14 consulting agreements without bringing them to the Board, and  
15 that is because the grant of shares from the company needed  
16 to be approved by the Board. And you know that because  
17 Richardson testified to it, and you know the defendant knew  
18 this because at one point, they were discussing issuing  
19 Richardson shares for his prior Board service and the  
20 defendant said the Board will have to approve the issuance of  
21 those shares. So everybody knows that if you are going to  
22 issue shares, you need to get the Board's approval, and they  
23 did not actually bring Al Geller's consulting agreement to  
24 the Board. And both Board members testified that they never  
25 agreed to provide blanket approval.

Summation - Ms. Smith

10309

1           You saw during the trial these April, 2013 Board  
2 minutes, and I think we saw them during the testimony of  
3 Mr. Dooley and there is a clause in those Board minutes,  
4 which I will pause, the Board minutes came in not for the  
5 truth of what was in there, but they are things that were  
6 written by the defendant, and there has been a lot of  
7 testimony about them not being circulated to the Board and  
8 not being approved by the Board members to verify what was in  
9 them was accurate. And we know that the April, 2013 Board  
10 minutes never actually went to the people who were present at  
11 the Board meeting to confirm their accuracy. So there is a  
12 section in those Board minutes that suggest that some sort of  
13 blanket approval was provided, but both Mr. Aselage and  
14 Mr. Richardson testified that that never happened.

15           And then we also have Government's Exhibit 1385,  
16 which is an e-mail in July of 2013 where the defendant  
17 himself says that he did not get blanket approval for the  
18 consultants. And in the e-mail the defendant and Mr. Shkreli  
19 are discussing an employment agreement with Michael Smith,  
20 who is somebody else. And the defendant said he thinks he  
21 was giving up equity since there is no plan. Equity grants  
22 are either approved by the Board where the CEO is given  
23 blanket discretion to a certain limit. I tried getting the  
24 latter for you, but Richardson wanted the consultants to come  
25 in.

Summation - Ms. Smith

10310

1           So the defendant himself is saying that he never  
2 got kind of blanket approval from the Board to issue shares  
3 to consultants in this July 2013 e-mail.

4           And then finally, you know, in general the Board  
5 never discussed using consulting agreements to repay  
6 MSMB Capital or MSMB Healthcare investors. Neither for Al  
7 Geller nor for Darren Blanton later on. There was no  
8 general discussion, just like there was no general  
9 discussion about using money and shares to repay investors  
10 with settlements.

11           And finally you see the executed consulting  
12 agreement with Al Geller which gives him 300,000 shares and  
13 then an extra 31,500 shares in stocks over a certain period  
14 of time. And, again, talks about the strategic corporate  
15 governance matters is the reason the consultant work he is  
16 allegedly going to do.

17           And finally you heard from Al Geller himself that  
18 he did not actually perform any consulting services for  
19 Retrophin. He did some life coaching or life providing  
20 personal advice providing to Mr. Shkreli. He did that  
21 before the agreement, he did that after the agreement, but  
22 it was not in connection with the consulting agreement and  
23 he was not actually providing services to Retrophin. And so  
24 as a result, Retrophin paid 331,500 shares to Al Geller, the  
25 thrift store owner in September of 2013, which at the time,

Summation - Ms. Smith

10311

1 and keep in mind, they were restricted. They could be sold  
2 later for more, but at the time \$2.1 million and got  
3 absolutely nothing in response to that. And this was a debt  
4 that had been created by Mr. Shkreli's fraud and it should  
5 have been paid by Mr. Shkreli or MSMB that Retrophin was  
6 paying as a result of the consulting agreement.

7 And you remember that Al Geller also told you that  
8 when he was first interviewed by the FBI, he said that he  
9 had provided consulting services. He was concerned and  
10 nervous about the agreement and then later admitted that he,  
11 in fact, had not. And that was the non-publication  
12 agreement that he entered into with the Government as a  
13 result of telling that lie.

14 And then the last consulting agreement that I want  
15 to talk about is Darren Blanton. And then Darren Blanton  
16 was an MSMB Capital investor and he had a little more  
17 complicated back story. As you remember, he invested  
18 1.25 million in MSMB Capital. He was not a Retrophin  
19 employee and had no investment in Retrophin, but at the very  
20 beginning of Retrophin, he had kind of given Mr. Shkreli the  
21 idea. He had a friend who had a son who obtained muscular  
22 dystrophy, which is a terrible disease, and suggested that  
23 Retrophin kind of be taken on to take on this disease and  
24 find a cure. And so he was involved in Retrophin in that  
25 early stage in that way, but he actually never invested and

Summation - Ms. Smith

10312

1 he was never actually an employee of Retrophin.

2 He and Mr. Shkreli have a falling out because  
3 he had concerns about his investment. If you remember, he  
4 is the one person who asked for his investment back before  
5 the wind-down e-mail, and Mr. Shkreli gave him back part of  
6 it and then basically vanished, and so he went to the SEC  
7 and reported what had happened and then continued to try and  
8 get Mr. Shkreli to pay him back. So between November of  
9 2011 when he first asked for his money back and when he  
10 actually gets a consulting agreement in March of 2016, he is  
11 kind of hounding Mr. Shkreli on a regular basis, you know,  
12 to get repaid. That said, he never made overt threats to  
13 sue MSMB Capital, Mr. Shkreli, or Retrophin. What he said  
14 and testified to is, Well, I went in the SEC because I  
15 wanted law enforcement to help me out. But he never  
16 threatened to sue or pursue the lawsuit.

17 So the defendant becomes involved in Mr. Blanton  
18 very early on, actually, because Mr. Shkreli had said he was  
19 going to give Mr. Blanton shares as a result of this idea  
20 for the muscular dystrophy drug, and then he takes those  
21 shares back, they were kind of founder shares that we talked  
22 about. And Mr. Greebel is actually the person who sends the  
23 paperwork and rescinds the shares, so that actually happened  
24 in February of 2012.

25 There is also interaction between the defendant



Summation - Ms. Smith

10313

1 and J.D. McCulloch who is someone who works for Mr. Blanton  
2 in early of January, 2013, where they are talking about the  
3 stock certificates that he gets as a distribution from  
4 MSMB Capital. So the defendant had a couple of contacts  
5 with Mr. Blanton early on. He knows Mr. Blanton is an  
6 MSMB Capital investor. He knows from the SEC investigation  
7 and is alerted to the fact that they suspect that  
8 Mr. Blanton has gone to the SEC. So the defendant had a lot  
9 of information about Darren Blanton. And you can see  
10 Government's Exhibit 606 here is an e-mail from Mr. Shkreli  
11 to Mr. Blanton, Mr. Rosensaft, and the defendant in August  
12 of 2013 where Mr. Shkreli says, Darren and I have agreed  
13 that I will give him 100,000 shares of my stock.

14 And so if you remember, what does Mr. Rosensaft  
15 want? Now Mr. Rosensaft does not know about any of the  
16 settlement agreements. He does not know about the other  
17 consulting agreements. Do you remember there is a reference  
18 to Al Geller in one of these e-mails and Mr. Rosensaft said  
19 I thought that was some other thing that had already  
20 happened when, in fact, in August of 2013 it hadn't? And he  
21 did not have any information about who Al Geller was. And  
22 so Mr. Rosensaft thought that Mr. Blanton and Mr. Shkreli  
23 were going to work it out and Mr. Shkreli was going to give  
24 him his shares. And that is consistent, you will see in the  
25 e-mail with what is going on. He does not understand that

Summation - Ms. Smith

10314

1 the shares are necessarily going to come from Retrophin.

2 And so this is the original e-mail in August  
3 of 2013 where Mr. Shkreli says, draft up an agreement. I'm  
4 going to give Mr. Blanton my shares to resolve our  
5 disagreement.

6 The Government's Exhibit 103-42 is then option  
7 agreement that the defendant sends that Mr. Rosensaft was  
8 copied on where Mr. Shkreli is going to give his own shares  
9 to Mr. Blanton in order to settle up their disagreement.

10 And then what happens next is the defendant sends  
11 Mr. Blanton a consulting agreement. So he first sends an  
12 option agreement and then he sends a consulting agreement.  
13 And he says as per your conversation with Martin, the  
14 package is a draft consulting agreement.

15 And do you remember this initial consulting  
16 agreement he was going to give him like 900,000 shares and  
17 \$900,000 which is a lot of money and Mr. Blanton says he did  
18 not even know about -- this did not even sound like in the  
19 ballpark what they were talking about, he is surprised by  
20 it.

21 And he also testified that he, too, before  
22 receiving that consulting agreement had never discussed the  
23 consulting services, had never had discussion with either  
24 the defendant or Mr. Shkreli. He was employed, he had his  
25 own job. He was not looking to be a consultant.

Summation - Ms. Smith

10315

1 And he also testified that after he received the  
2 draft agreement and after the other final agreement, he  
3 never discussed serving as a consultant to Retrophin. And  
4 that he did not even know what it meant, the strategic  
5 corporate governance services, he did not know what that  
6 actually meant, and that is transcript 3641.

7 And then there is an e-mail in October of 2013,  
8 which is Government's Exhibit 643 between the defendant and  
9 Mr. Shkreli. And again this is an explanation of why a  
10 consulting agreement was sent to Darren Blanton. And if you  
11 look at the bottom e-mail, the defendant says that one of  
12 Blanton's guys just called me and said they don't want an  
13 option from you, he wants 100,000 shares of stock and he  
14 preferred registered stock, but he will accept unregistered  
15 stock, but he does not want to participate in the consulting  
16 agreement.

17 And Mr. Shkreli says, Fine with me. And then the  
18 defendant writes, and this is significant, Where will the  
19 100,000 come from? If it is from the company it will need  
20 to be in a consulting agreement.

21 And that is a false statement because we know that  
22 the company has issue stock without a consulting agreement.  
23 It can decide, the Board can approve the issuance of stock.  
24 We've seen settlement agreements where stock is issued, so  
25 there is no need if stock is going to come from the company

1 itself where it is in a consulting agreement.

2           What the defendant is saying is it is 100,000  
3 coming from you, it will come from you. If it is coming  
4 from the company, we should use a consulting agreement  
5 because that is going to be the easiest way to get this done  
6 without anybody really knowing what is going on and what the  
7 true purpose is and then we can get the company to issue  
8 shares. And, again, keep in mind that Mr. Shkreli has  
9 2.5 million of his own shares at this point and Mr. Blanton  
10 is saying here is the care of the free trading an option, so  
11 this CHECK ON question should not even be happening.  
12 Mr. Shkreli should be resolving his dispute with Mr. Blanton  
13 himself. And instead what they are doing is talking about  
14 using a consulting agreement to get shares out of the  
15 company.

16           And then the leader of the e-mail conversation  
17 between the two of them, Mr. Shkreli said why would it have  
18 to be a consulting agreement? And the defendant responds we  
19 can call it a settlement agreement, but given Marcum's  
20 recent behavior and that is the reference to the whole  
21 settlement discussion and restatement, they may require this  
22 to be disclosed in the financials. I was trying to prevent  
23 that. And then Mr. Shkreli responds, maybe we won't have  
24 Marcum. Does not matter if it is disclosed it is preferable  
25 but that it is not. So again it is something that shows the

Summation - Ms. Smith

10317

1 defendant's intent and his knowledge. He knows Mr. Shkreli  
2 has the ability to buy these shares himself. He is  
3 troubleshooting for Mr. Shkreli. His is figuring out a way  
4 to take the shares from the company.

5 And again the company is the defendant's client.  
6 He owes a duty to the company. He is virtually looking out  
7 for the best interest of the company. But instead he is  
8 working with Mr. Shkreli to figure out how he can use the  
9 company shares to pay for something that Mr. Shkreli owes.

10 And we saw that after this e-mail exchange he  
11 actually sent a draft settlement agreement which is  
12 Government's Exhibit 103-46 and it shows, you know, the  
13 option the consulting, the settlement agreement. These are  
14 all interchangeable. It does not have anything to do with  
15 consulting. It had to do with resolving the dispute and  
16 getting the dispute paid for.

17 And then what happens is in January of 2014 none  
18 of the first three options, consulting, settlement  
19 agreements actually get resolved. And then in January  
20 of 2014 they are finally talking about resolving the  
21 dispute. And on two different occasions the defendant again  
22 suggests using a consulting agreement to resolve the dispute  
23 and get the shares out of the company and that is  
24 Government's Exhibit 660 and 663.

25 And if you remember in this time period Rosensaft

Summation - Ms. Smith

10318

1 said, you know, because this is the only agreement he  
2 has any firsthand knowledge of and certainly the only one  
3 that he is copied on at all. And remember he thinks the  
4 shares are coming from Mr. Shkreli and even he says this  
5 better be a real consulting agreement. This guy better  
6 actually be providing services. You shouldn't be using a  
7 scheme agreement if he is not a consultant. And you know  
8 that the defendant knows that he is not a consultant. He  
9 had been using all these different types of agreements, it  
10 does not matter which one, and the consulting agreement is  
11 brought up to get shares out of the company instead of from  
12 Mr. Shkreli which is something that Mr. Rosensaft does not  
13 know.

14 And then again this is the final consulting  
15 agreement that gets signed d for Darren Blanton. And like  
16 the one for Al Geller at the time that it is signed in March  
17 of 2014 it is for 200,000 shares, it is worth approximately  
18 \$3.7 million. So the company is having \$3.7 million worth  
19 of shares go out of the company for Darren Blanton to settle  
20 a despise for Martin Shkreli. And you know that the Board  
21 never approved this agreement, either. Both Richardson and  
22 Aselage testified to that.

23 And you also know that Mr. Blanton testified that  
24 he understood the purpose of the agreement was to get repaid  
25 for his dispute with Mr. Shkreli both the MSMB Capital and

Summation - Ms. Smith

10319

1 then the whole dispute in the beginning about issuing  
2 founder shares and taking them back and that he never  
3 actually provided any consulting services for Retrophin.  
4 Again, he did not know what strategic and corporate  
5 governance meant. To the extent that he was introducing  
6 Mr. Shkreli to investors, that was something he did with all  
7 of his investments and he did it both before the agreement  
8 and after the agreement.

9 And one other way that you know that the  
10 consulting agreements were just a way to get shares out of  
11 Retrophin, remember before I told you that I had put a pin  
12 in the fact that Marshall agreements for shares never  
13 actually get paid. They divided it into pieces and  
14 Retrophin paid one and Mr. Shkreli was supposed to pay the  
15 other and he just does not do it.

16 So if you look at this e-mail which is  
17 Government's Exhibit 665 at the bottom the defendant says he  
18 just spoke to Schuyler and resolved the alleged issue. He  
19 mentioned that you and he discussed he would receive 15,000  
20 additional shares. Was that meant to come from you or  
21 should we do a consulting agreement for him. And  
22 Mr. Marshall was complaining because he never got the 5,300  
23 shares he is owed and now it is later in time and he wants  
24 more shares. The defendant's knee jerk reaction is were the  
25 shares supposed to come from you or if they are going to

Summation - Ms. Smith

10320

1 come from Retrophin should we do a consulting agreement.

2 And Mr. Shkreli says ask him if he will tolerate a

3 consulting agreement and the defendant says okay.

4 And they do not ever enter into a consulting

5 agreement. None of this ever happens because as usual

6 Mr. Shkreli does not follow through if people are not kind

7 of bugging him. But this is the way in which the defendant

8 and Mr. Shkreli were using consulting agreements to take

9 shares out of the company. Either the shares are going to

10 come from you or they are going to come from the company.

11 If they are to come from the company, at this point you have

12 got disclosure issues if you do a settlement agreement. So

13 let's use a consulting agreement.

14 THE COURT: Is now a good time to break for the

15 jurors' lunch? Are you ready to take lunch now or would you

16 like to hear a little bit more? Would you like lunch now?

17 ALL JURORS: Yes.

18 THE COURT: All right. Please do not talk about

19 the case. The time to discuss the case has not yet come.

20 We will see you in about one hour. Thank you for your

21 ongoing attention.

22 (Jury exits the courtroom.)

23 (The following matters occurred outside the

24 presence of the jury.)

25 THE COURT: All right. Let's take one hour. In



Proceedings

10321

1 the meantime we will get the microphone fixed. I apologize  
2 again. This is an ongoing problem.

3 (Lunch recess taken at 1:05 p.m.)

4 (Continued on the next page.)

5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25

SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT

10322

1 A F T E R N O O N S E S S I O N

2 (Time, 1:58 p.m.; Open court; No jury present.)

3 THE COURT: All right. We are getting the jury  
4 lined up. I would like to know when we can get started. They  
5 are lining up.

6 MR. MASTRO: Mr. Greebel should be back any second,  
7 Your Honor.

8 (Short pause.)

9 THE COURT: Still waiting for Mr. Greebel.

10 (Short pause.)

11 THE COURT: All right. Let's bring in the jury.

12 (WHEREUPON, at 2:10 p.m., the jury re-entered the  
13 courtroom and the proceedings continued in open court, to  
14 wit:)

15 THE COURT: All jurors are present. Please have a  
16 seat.

17 You may resume, Ms. Smith, with your summation.

18 MS. SMITH: So, before the break -- I have a  
19 microphone now.

20 (Laughter.)

21 MS. SMITH: Before the break, we walked through all  
22 of the evidence for Count 1, and you saw all of the evidence  
23 of the defendant's intent and his knowledge and the actions  
24 that he took. The one other thing I want to mention here that  
25 I am going to address again in the end, you have the evidence

## SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT

10323

1 that shows what the defendant knew, and the steps that he  
2 took, but one of the questions is why did he do what he did,  
3 why was he protecting Mr. Shkreli and not looking out for the  
4 best interests of Retrophin.

5 And as we have talked about consistently throughout  
6 the trial, it is important to keep in mind the context, that  
7 in the fall of 2012, beginning of 2013, the MSMB entities and  
8 Retrophin owed Katten more than \$700,000. And at the time,  
9 the defendant was an income partner making about \$355,000.  
10 And by the time of the end of the conspiracy charged in  
11 Count 1, and the last consulting agreement is in March of  
12 2014, and it goes to the end of September 2014, the defendant  
13 has -- is the principal attorney for the bills for Katten, and  
14 there are millions of dollars in bills that are being paid in  
15 that time period, and the defendant has gone from being kind  
16 of an income partner sort of in the middle of the ranking at  
17 the law firm to the top income partner in the entire firm.

18 And so the -- when we talk about the motive being  
19 money, it is a direct correlation between keeping Retrophin as  
20 a client, keeping Mr. Shkreli happy, and the defendant's own  
21 salary. And, again, we will walk through that in more detail  
22 at the end, but keep that in mind when you think about the  
23 evidence for Count 1 as well as for Count 2.

24 And so I just want to end with Count 1 on the  
25 elements again. Again, the two elements are, is that there's

## SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT

10324

1 a conspiracy to commit wire fraud, and then, second, the  
2 defendant knowingly and intentionally became a member of the  
3 conspiracy. And I submit to you that all of the evidence that  
4 we talked through proves both of these elements beyond a  
5 reasonable doubt. And, again, keep in mind that a conspiracy  
6 is just an agreement, and so the agreement to commit the crime  
7 is in and of itself the crime, and there is no requirement  
8 that conspirators actually carry out their plan, but all of  
9 the evidence that you've seen about the settlement and  
10 consulting agreements shows you that they, in fact, did. And  
11 all of the evidence that we talked about shows that the  
12 defendant acted knowingly and intentionally.

13 And there were just a couple of other legal points  
14 that I want to make sure to discuss. The intent to defraud,  
15 as you will hear the judge instruct you, is just the intent to  
16 take money and property from Retrophin. There's not a larger  
17 intent to harm. It is the taking of money and property, which  
18 clearly happened with the settlement and consulting  
19 agreements. And you know, again, while we don't need to show  
20 any specific misrepresentations or omissions, that there were  
21 multiple specific misrepresentations and omissions in  
22 connection with the crime charged in Count 1. So there's the  
23 consulting agreements which say that they are consulting  
24 agreements, when, in fact, the individuals are providing no  
25 consulting services, and it is simply a way to get shares out

## SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT

10325

1 of the company. There are the indemnification agreements and  
2 the notes which say that Mr. Shkreli is going to repay the  
3 company, which is in and of itself a lie. There's the lie  
4 that Mr. Shkreli tells on the board call that he will repay  
5 when he has no intention of doing so. And then, obviously,  
6 there's all the information that the defendant, who had a duty  
7 to his client to disclose material important information, did  
8 not provide about the purpose of the settlement agreements,  
9 that the settlement agreements had happened at all, the  
10 consulting agreements.

11 In terms of the conspiracy, you know that the  
12 defendant agreed with Mr. Shkreli to commit these crimes.  
13 That is clear from the evidence. But you also know that there  
14 were other people involved, including Mr. Panoff, who went  
15 along with the conspiracy, Mr. Biestek, Mr. Mulleady, and  
16 Mr. Fernandez, who at various points also contributed to the  
17 conspiracy.

18 And then the last legal element that I want you to  
19 think about is venue, which just means an act in furtherance  
20 of the conspiracy had to happen somewhere in the Eastern  
21 District of New York, which is Queens, Staten Island,  
22 Brooklyn, and Long Island. And the judge will instruct you  
23 that for venue, there's actually a different standard of  
24 proof. Rather than reasonable doubt, it is just  
25 preponderance, which means more likely than not. And there is

## SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT

10326

1 no question that we have met the preponderance standard for  
2 venue for Count 1.

3           You saw that coconspirator Marek Biestek is a  
4 resident of Queens. You can see the East Rockaway Queens on  
5 that backdated interest. Mr. Rosenwald was a resident of  
6 Lawrence, New York, which is in Nassau County, and  
7 communicated with Mr. Shkreli in connection with the  
8 settlement agreement. The Fearnow shares that were nominally  
9 assigned to Mr. Biestek were used to satisfy Mr. Rosenwald's  
10 agreement. Mr. Spielberg was a resident of Brooklyn. And  
11 then, even yesterday, for example, you saw that Mr. Geller, Al  
12 Geller, traveled to New York to discuss the settlement -- his  
13 consulting agreement with Mr. Shkreli, and he told you that  
14 when he came to New York he would fly through LaGuardia to do  
15 that.

16           So that is the end of Count 1. And the second crime  
17 that I want to discuss is Count 2, which is the securities  
18 fraud conspiracy. And in Count 2, the defendant and his  
19 coconspirators, including Martin Shkreli, engaged in a  
20 conspiracy to defraud investors and potential investors in  
21 Retrophin, seeking to control the price and trading volume of  
22 Retrophin's stock.

23           And we are going to walk through the evidence, but  
24 this count includes the distribution of the free trading  
25 shares, or the Fearnow shares, to a group of associates and

## SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT

10327

1 Mr. Shkreli with the intention of controlling those shares,  
2 the form 13D that failed to disclose Mr. Shkreli's beneficial  
3 ownership of those shares, and then the ways in which the  
4 defendant and Mr. Shkreli sought to control the free trading  
5 shares in order to control the price and volume of Retrophin  
6 stock.

7 So, again, at the beginning, I just want to point  
8 out the elements so you can be thinking about them as we talk  
9 through the evidence, and then I will go through them again at  
10 the end.

11 But for securities fraud conspiracy, again, just an  
12 agreement. But, first, there's a conspiracy to commit  
13 securities fraud, the defendant knowingly and intentionally  
14 became a member of the conspiracy, the defendant or one of his  
15 coconspirators knowingly committed one of the overt acts  
16 charged in the indictment. And I'll go through that at the  
17 end, but overt acts are just a series of specific acts in  
18 furtherance of the charged conspiracy. And then, fourth, the  
19 overt acts were done to further some object of the conspiracy.

20 And then again, as with wire fraud, while we are not  
21 proving securities fraud, we are proving a conspiracy, it is  
22 helpful to know what the crime of securities fraud actually  
23 is. And securities fraud requires that a defendant employ the  
24 device, scheme, or artifice to defraud, made an untrue  
25 statement of material fact or omitted to state a material fact

## SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT

10328

1 necessary to make the statements made in light of the  
2 circumstances under which they were made misleading, or  
3 engaged in an act, practice, or course of business that  
4 operated or would operate as a fraud or deceit upon a  
5 purchaser or seller. And you will also hear the judge say  
6 that any conduct that's designed to deceive or defraud  
7 investors by controlling or artificially affecting the price  
8 of securities is prohibited.

9           And the last point there is something that Deb  
10 Oremland talked about. You remember in her testimony she's  
11 talking about the importance of providing accurate  
12 information, all of the public filings, because the people in  
13 the market are relying on that information when they decide  
14 whether or not they are going to buy the stock. And so if  
15 that information is not right, or if there's something else  
16 going on that they are not aware of, like someone's  
17 controlling the price or the volume of the stock, then when  
18 you are going to make a decision about whether to buy this  
19 stock, they don't have all the information that they are  
20 supposed to have to do that, and it is not fair. And so that  
21 is kind of the essence of the securities fraud to keep in  
22 mind.

23           So just to set the stage for Count 2, and keep in  
24 mind that some of this actually overlaps with Count 1, which  
25 is what I was talking about before, but from the perspective



## SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT

10329

1 of Retrophin, the company, in the fall of 2012, it is a  
2 private company, and as you heard from multiple witnesses,  
3 there was a discussion of taking the company public. And,  
4 ultimately, the decision is made to take the company public  
5 through a reverse merger, and you heard a lot about that, that  
6 it basically means merging into a shell company that already  
7 exists that's public, but doesn't have anything going on, and  
8 then you merge with that company and you become a new public  
9 company.

10 And so you also heard a lot of testimony, and you  
11 saw the bank records. This was a very difficult time for  
12 Retrophin. It didn't have a lot of assets, they had been  
13 trying to get some drugs through the Valeant deal, and it fell  
14 apart. And so when they go public, they don't have a lot of  
15 money, and the company is struggling. And they -- until they  
16 get to the PIPE in February, there's a real concern that  
17 Retrophin is not actually going to make it. And that is kind  
18 of at the heart of the reason why Mr. Shkreli and the  
19 defendant and others want to be able to control the price and  
20 volume of Retrophin stock, to make sure that it doesn't  
21 collapse and then the whole company goes under.

22 And before we start talking about the specific  
23 conduct, I want to talk about Government Exhibit 506, which is  
24 a discussion of the -- a liquidation press release that  
25 Mr. Shkreli drafts. And so, in December of 2012, specifically

## SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT

10330

1 December 29, at the very end, as all of this conduct is going  
2 on, there's really a concern that Retrophin might not make it.  
3 And so Mr. Shkreli drafts this press release announcing that  
4 Retrophin has shut down, kind of as a like, "This is what I  
5 will send out because I think we are not going to make it."  
6 And he sends it to Mr. Greebel.

7 And Mr. Greebel's response is, which are Government  
8 Exhibit 506A and 506B, are very telling. So Mr. Shkreli sends  
9 out the release, and then 506A, the defendant says, "Did I  
10 miss something?" And Mr. Shkreli responds, "Too much stress,  
11 too many liabilities." And that's also on December 28, 29.

12 And 506B, which is the same e-mail but a different  
13 chain, the defendant writes back, Ligand said they would  
14 extend, Roth is ready to do a raise. I don't hear anyone  
15 breathing down your neck for Monday.

16 So you can see that the defendant is really  
17 encouraging Mr. Shkreli to push forward. At this point, as we  
18 just discussed, there's \$600,000 outstanding due to Katten.  
19 He knows that if the company doesn't survive, Katten's not  
20 going to get paid, and it is going to impact his bottom line,  
21 and he's motivated to help Mr. Shkreli figure out a way to  
22 make the company work.

23 And it is in this context that everything else that  
24 we're talking about happens. And the agreement to control the  
25 price and trading volume of Retrophin is an agreement that is

## SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT

10331

1 designed to get the company past this hump and to the point  
2 where they can actually raise money. And so it is important  
3 to keep the timing of this kind of liquidation press release  
4 in mind as we talk about everything else. Because this is the  
5 reason, this is the driving reason behind the desire to make  
6 sure that the price doesn't crater for Retrophin.

7           So taking a step back in time to November of 2012,  
8 there was the discussion about which shell to actually use.  
9 And you know from all the testimony that they wound up with  
10 the Desert Gateway shell. And Jackson Su testified, I  
11 believe, about clean versus dirty shells. So you can actually  
12 find a shell that doesn't have any shares associated with it,  
13 or you can find a shell that does.

14           And there's a discussion between Mr. Shkreli and the  
15 defendant in November of 2012, which is Government Exhibit  
16 458, where Mr. Shkreli is explaining that he wants this shell  
17 that has the free trading shares. The defendant asks, "Is  
18 there any reason other than the 2.5 million that you want this  
19 shell? A new clean shell would definitely be cheaper." And  
20 the defendant says, "The 2.5 million help a lot."

21           And we will see exactly how they help as we go  
22 forward. But keep in mind, it says a new clean shell will  
23 definitely be cheaper. Because the money that is paid for the  
24 shell is what enables the defendant and Mr. Shkreli to assign  
25 those free trading shares to other people.

## SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT

10332

1           And we can see that here. Retrophin is actually the  
2           entity that pays for the shell, and they pay \$200,000, and  
3           they pay the first \$100,000 on December 13, 2013. And but for  
4           Retrophin paying for the shell, they would not have had the  
5           opportunity to get the 2.5 million free trading shares. The  
6           defendant just said it in the last e-mail, a clean shell  
7           without any shares attached would be cheaper.

8           The reason that they have access to the 2.5 million  
9           shares is because Retrophin is paying for the Desert Gateway  
10          shell. And so the shares should be Retrophin's because  
11          Retrophin is paying for the shell. But, instead, what happens  
12          is that they distribute it to other people, and they use these  
13          purchase agreements to make it look like it is separate from  
14          the company.

15          And just a couple other ways that you know that the  
16          Fearnow shares are made available, only because Retrophin pays  
17          for the shell. The legal opinion that gets written, we will  
18          talk about it in minute, that allows the shares to actually be  
19          distributed, there's a discussion between the defendant and  
20          Mr. Shkreli, on December 13, 2012, about how the legal opinion  
21          isn't going to be released for the Fearnow shares until the  
22          shell payment is made.

23          And then the other way you know that the Fearnow  
24          shares are only made available because Retrophin pays for the  
25          shell is as you heard from Mr. Pierotti and as you can see in

## SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT

10333

1 Government Exhibit 479, originally, they were going to get all  
2 2.4 million Fearnow shares, and then they actually windup  
3 having to hold some back. They had to hold 400,000 back  
4 because Retrophin doesn't have the full \$200,000, they only  
5 have \$100,000. And so the deal that they strike with Fearnow  
6 is that they will pay on the second 100,000 later, and in  
7 return, Fearnow can hold onto the 400,000 shares. And if for  
8 some reason they didn't make the second payment, they wouldn't  
9 get those second 400 shares. So that's another way that you  
10 know that the Fearnow shares only become available, because of  
11 the money that Retrophin's actually paying for the shell.

12 And so what happens at the beginning of December,  
13 which is Government Exhibit 468, is that they've decided  
14 they're going to buy the shell, Retrophin's going to buy  
15 Desert Gateway, and the defendant and Mr. Shkreli are going to  
16 distribute the shares that come along with the shell to a  
17 group of people that they're associated with, and that  
18 Mr. Shkreli thinks he can control.

19 And Mr. Greebel lays out the steps by which that's  
20 going to happen in this e-mail. And, basically, what it is is  
21 that the shares are held by someone associated with the shell,  
22 and they are made available because Retrophin's buying the  
23 shell, but instead of just giving them to Retrophin, they have  
24 those shares sold, and it is sale, in quotation marks, to  
25 seven associates. And we'll walk through that --

## SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT

10334

1 Mr. Pierotti's purchase agreements, specifically, but,  
2 basically, he pays \$400 for 400,000 shares.

3 So there's this sale between Fearnow and those  
4 individuals that doesn't look like it has anything to do with  
5 Retrophin, but, in fact, it is only happening because  
6 Retrophin is paying for the shell. And those purchase  
7 agreements make it look like those seven people are getting  
8 those shares completely unconnected to Mr. Shkreli or to  
9 Retrophin.

10 And we know that Mr. Shkreli is the one that  
11 selected the group to receive the shares, and Mr. Pierotti  
12 testified to that during his direct. And he listed out who  
13 was given the opportunity to buy the shares.

14 And, again, he was the one that said that Martin  
15 Shkreli was the one who selected the group who could actually  
16 buy the shares, and, also, the amount. And you can see that  
17 in the e-mails, where the defendant and Mr. Shkreli are going  
18 back and forth on how much each person's going to get.

19 And we know, just as a little call back to Count 1,  
20 that Mr. Fernandez and Mr. Mulleady agreed to transfer their  
21 shares they already had gotten in Retrophin back to  
22 Mr. Shkreli, at the same time they were getting the  
23 opportunity to buy the Fearnow shares. And we know that the  
24 defendant and Mr. Biestek had a conversation about those  
25 transfers right in this same time period, November 30.

## SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT

10335

1           So the defendant is involved in drafting the  
2 purchase agreements, sending them out to the Fearnow shares  
3 recipients, then collects all of the signed purchase  
4 agreements, and he sends them both to the lawyer for Fearnow,  
5 which is Heskett and Heskett, and then also he forwards them  
6 to Mr. Shkreli. So he is papering this entire transaction.  
7 And that's Government Exhibit 480. And then Government  
8 Exhibit 990, which is just a demonstrative, is just showing  
9 you the actual distribution of the Fearnow shares.

10           And, again, if you remember, that there were 2.5  
11 million free trading shares. 100,000 were owned by someone  
12 named Ruth Shepley, who was connected to Mr. Fearnow, she was  
13 Mr. Fearnow's partner. There were 400,000 that were held  
14 back, those were the escrowed until that second payment was  
15 made. And they were supposed to be held back from each  
16 individual person, and we will see that in a minute. And then  
17 the remaining 2 million shares were distributed out to those  
18 seven associates, which were Kevin Mulleady, Thomas Fernandez,  
19 Marek Biestek, Tim Pierotti, Claridge Capital, which is the  
20 entity for Ron Tilles, Andy Vaino, and Edmund Sullivan.

21           And this is just, Government Exhibit 115-4, this is  
22 just the actual distribution of the Fearnow shares. I point  
23 this out only because you can see that Edmund Sullivan is in  
24 Brooklyn, New York, as is Marek Biestek. When we talk about  
25 venue for this count, the Fearnow shares that they received

## SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT

10336

1 from this first tranche actually get sent to Brooklyn. And  
2 there's the Fearnow shares for Ron Tilles actually get sent  
3 directly to the defendant.

4 So we also know that there's evidence in the record  
5 that Mr. Shkreli discussed his desire to control the Fearnow  
6 shares prior to when they were distributed. So at transcript  
7 5940, Mr. Pierotti testified about -- that he -- that  
8 Mr. Shkreli said that because he owned all the shares or he  
9 controlled all the shares, he needs to distribute them out to  
10 people, sell them to a lot of people that were close to him.  
11 And we also heard from Jackson Su that Mr. Shkreli told him,  
12 and that's transcript 4777, that Mr. Shkreli would control the  
13 selling of the stock, and that when he sold it, and the person  
14 would get the profit share, and, basically, he would be the  
15 one that would control what happens with the stock, even  
16 though it was in that individual's name.

17 And then the final step the defendant takes in  
18 connection with the distribution of the shares is this getting  
19 procurement of the legal opinion. And, basically, they need a  
20 legal opinion, the same way that we saw at different points to  
21 lift restrictions on stock and to make sure that stock could  
22 actually be free trading, they needed an opinion from an  
23 outside law firm that said that the Fearnow share recipients  
24 were neither affiliates of Retrophin, nor together with  
25 anybody else exercised control over Retrophin.



## SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT

10337

1 And so the defendant asked everybody to send that  
2 e-mail back, which is at the bottom, which said that  
3 represented that they were not an officer, director, or holder  
4 of ten percent or more of the equity security in Desert  
5 Gateway, and do not alone or together with any other person  
6 exercise control over Desert Gateway. And keep in mind, this  
7 e-mail is written on December 13, 2013. This is a day after  
8 the reverse merger, so Desert Gateway has already become  
9 Retrophin at this point.

10 And he's asking those seven people to represent that  
11 they're not an officer, director, or holder of more than ten  
12 percent, and they are not an affiliate. And you heard Deb  
13 Oremland testified that an affiliate has a specific  
14 definition, which will also be in the jury instructions. And  
15 so the issue is whether or not that person qualifies under any  
16 of these categories or together with others could control the  
17 company.

18 And then you will see that the defendant gathers all  
19 that information, and then, ultimately, the law firm issues  
20 the opinion saying that none of these people are affiliates of  
21 the company. And the reason that's important is because if  
22 you're an affiliate then -- or you could exercise control, the  
23 shares wouldn't be free trading. And they need everyone not  
24 to be an affiliate because they need to make sure the shares  
25 are free trading, because that's how you're going to control

## SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT

10338

1 the price and volume of the stock. If the shares are  
2 restricted and you can't trade them, then there's nothing --  
3 you know, then there's no way to actually control the price  
4 and volume of the stock.

5 And keep in mind at this point, it is a very, very,  
6 very small company. And we are going to see that a number of  
7 the Fearnow share recipients, despite statements by  
8 Mr. Shkreli, are, in fact, working at the company. And that  
9 together with Mr. Shkreli, they agree to exercise control over  
10 the Fearnow stock, and they may or may not be involved in  
11 other decision making at the company. So the assertion that  
12 they are not affiliates is questionable at least for some of  
13 the Fearnow share recipients.

14 There's also, in addition to making sure that the  
15 Fearnow share recipients say they are not affiliates, there  
16 are also a number of steps that the defendant and Mr. Shkreli  
17 take to make sure that the individuals who receive the Fearnow  
18 shares aren't deemed employees or consultants of the company.  
19 And this doesn't necessarily have any kind of legal  
20 significance, but it is important because they want to make  
21 sure that nobody that got the Fearnow shares can be restricted  
22 from trading the stock. So if you're an employee or  
23 consultant who might have inside information, as Mr. Pierotti  
24 testified, you might not be able to trade your shares.

25 It also puts distance between Mr. Shkreli and the

## SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT

10339

1 people who he's going to control the shares of. It makes it  
2 look like they are not closely affiliated. It was certainly  
3 steps that they took because they wanted it to make -- to make  
4 it look like these Fearnow share recipients didn't have a  
5 connection to the company, didn't have a connection to  
6 Mr. Shkreli.

7 So one of the steps, for example, the defendant  
8 says, "Should I send everybody shares to the address, the work  
9 address, courtesy of MSMB." Mr. Shkreli says, no. And you  
10 know they actually got distributed, for the most part, to  
11 their home addresses.

12 The defendant also sends this e-mail, which is  
13 Government Exhibit 500, on December 17, 2012, and it is only  
14 to -- it's sent firm wide, and then all of the Fearnow share  
15 recipients are copied. And it basically says that everybody's  
16 fired. That the only people who are left as employees are  
17 these few individuals, Leonora Izerne, Mr. Shkreli's sister,  
18 Jackson Su, and Michael Smith and himself.

19 And, as we know, you know, the Fearnow share  
20 recipients, some of them continued to work for Retrophin  
21 consistently from before the merger until after the merger.  
22 And you can actually see at the very time that they are  
23 receiving shares, they are working for the company. So, for  
24 example, in Government Exhibit 499, if you look at Kevin  
25 Mulleady, on December 16, 2012, there's a conversation where

## SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT

10340

1 Mr. Shkreli says he wants to get a replacement server for  
2 Retrophin, he's asking Mr. Mulleady to change all sorts of  
3 things on Retrophin's web site, and to put a new bio up for  
4 himself. And then in response, on the right-hand side,  
5 Mr. Mulleady responded, "I set up this e-mail." So he set up  
6 a non-Retrophin e-mail, again, to make it look like he's not  
7 actually working for the company.

8 And then he's talking about waiting for the FedEx,  
9 which is the FedEx with the Fearnow shares. And Mr. Shkreli  
10 says, "Call FedEx and track the package. Don't stay home."  
11 And Mr. Mulleady responds, "I'll be in in a little, not  
12 feeling well." And Mr. Shkreli responds at the top there,  
13 "No, get in on time, WTF, need you here."

14 So the very same day that Mr. Shkreli is sending the  
15 e-mail that everybody's fired and saying that they are not  
16 employees, he's telling Mr. Mulleady to keep an eye out for  
17 his Fearnow shares and get himself into the office.

18 And you know that Kevin Mulleady and Mr. Shkreli had  
19 an on and off again relationship, but -- and was working and  
20 not working at various times. But, consistently, he's listed  
21 as having a termination date of January 2013. And we know  
22 that's right because a lot of the MSMB Healthcare investors  
23 who were dealing with Mr. Mulleady were dealing with him up  
24 until that time. There are e-mails, like the e-mail that we  
25 just looked at, showing he's doing work for Retrophin until

## SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT

10341

1 that point.

2 And the same is true of a number of the other  
3 Fearnow share recipients, that they worked for Retrophin from  
4 before the merger, straight through until at least 2014. And  
5 I -- for Mr. Biestek, you heard testimony from Mr. Aselage and  
6 Mr. Massella, for Mr. Fernandez, you heard testimony from  
7 Mr. Richardson, Mr. Aselage, for Mr. Tilles, you heard  
8 testimony from Mr. Massella and Mr. Aselage, and for  
9 Mr. Vaino, you heard testimony from Mr. Richardson and  
10 Mr. Aselage.

11 And there are e-mails as well. So, for example, you  
12 know from Mr. Massella that Ron Tilles, right after the merger  
13 and Jackson Su leaves, serving as the CFO, and there are  
14 Citrin e-mails where he's responding to various accounting  
15 work.

16 And so, significantly, as we saw with Count 1, the  
17 board is not informed of this decision to allegedly fire  
18 everyone and have them not serve as employees. And so this is  
19 something that's being done by Mr. Shkreli in connection with  
20 the Fearnow share recipients for a very specific purpose, but  
21 it is not made known to the board what is actually being done.  
22 And, in fact, as far as the board members know from what they  
23 see, these individuals are continuing to work at Retrophin.

24 And you also know that the board wasn't all about  
25 the Fearnow share distribution. This is Richardson's

## SUMMATION - GOVERNMENT

10342

1 testimony at 1792. He didn't know that the shell, which, by  
2 the way, he provided money in connection with purchasing, had  
3 came with any free trading shares, how they were distributed.  
4 And that wasn't information that Mr. Shkreli gave him, and it  
5 wasn't information that the defendant gave him. And you know  
6 from Mr. Aselage, who's the other board member at the time,  
7 was that he is understanding that the note was going to make  
8 shares available to the company, which is not, in fact, what  
9 happened.

10 And then the next thing that the defendant and  
11 Mr. Shkreli do is again with the form 13D, although there is  
12 this plan to control the Fearnow shares, he does not disclose  
13 Mr. Shkreli's beneficial ownership of the shares in the 13D.  
14 So, again, Mr. Shkreli has his own 2.5 million personal  
15 shares, and then there's also disclosed in the 13D that MSMB  
16 Capital and MSMB Healthcare have shares. But the free trading  
17 Fearnow shares are not listed as owned or controlled by  
18 Mr. Shkreli, as they would be required to be under the 13D.

19 And so we will see, going forward, how he -- how  
20 Mr. Shkreli, with the defendant's help, in fact, controlled  
21 many of those shares, but this 13D did not disclose that  
22 control. And, again, the defendant is the one who drafted the  
23 13D, we saw that in the last section.

24 (Continued on the next page.)

25

Summation - Ms. Smith

10343

1 MS. SMITH: And this is the actual 13B filing which  
2 lists the total amount of shares that Mr. Shkreli either  
3 owned or controlled at that point, that was 40.5 percent.  
4 Obviously with an additional 2.5 million shares and there are  
5 only 8 million shares outstanding, he would be by far the  
6 majority controlled owner of Retrophin, having those  
7 2.5 million shares be disclosed. And one of the reasons that  
8 they weren't is because he didn't want anyone to know that he  
9 had the ability to control not only almost all of the  
10 free-trading shares of the company, but in terms of control  
11 of the company generally, more than 50 percent.

12 And so the next section I want to talk about the  
13 ways in which you know that the defendant and Mr. Shkreli  
14 controlled the price and trading volume of stock or attempted  
15 to. And so Mr. Shkreli discussed at a number of points  
16 actually wanting to increase trading volume and liquidity for  
17 the stock. This is an email from December 18th, which is  
18 Government Exhibit 112-21, sent out to a number of people  
19 stating that one of his priorities for the future is  
20 increasing the trading volume of the stock.

21 But the clearest example of the defendant and  
22 Mr. Shkreli seeking to control the price in trading volume of  
23 the Retrophin stock in this time period through the Fearnow  
24 shares is actually the Tim Pierotti story.

25 And so I want to take a minute and talk about Tim

Summation - Ms. Smith

10344

1 Pierotti's background. You know that he came to MSMB  
2 Consumer, which was another hedge fund in 2011. And that he  
3 worked there kind of through the summer of 2012. And then at  
4 some point MSMB Consumer was shut down by Mr. Shkreli and he,  
5 Mr. Pierotti, was working on the Garreco transaction and some  
6 other transactions that he was working on separately from  
7 Retrophin.

8 And you know that Mr. Pierotti had a termination  
9 agreement in November of 2012, which is Government  
10 Exhibit 112-10. And he testified that the agreement was  
11 actually with both MSMB Healthcare and Retrophin, even though  
12 he had not worked Retrophin or MSMB Healthcare, but he signed  
13 an agreement in order to get his 20,000 severance payment on  
14 November 12th.

15 And he testified at transcript 5903 to 04 that had  
16 he not performed work for Retrophin before or after signing  
17 the termination agreement. And he testified that that was  
18 because there was no row role for him at Retrophin. It's a  
19 biotech, I was a political science major from Boston College.  
20 So his area of expertise is consumer, not biotech or pharma.

21 And he testified that he was given the opportunity  
22 to buy the Fearnow shares through Marek Biestek. Marek had  
23 set him up with Mr. Shkreli and that he made the initial  
24 discussions with Mr. Shkreli and Mr. Biestek. He actually had  
25 some concerns right up front whether this was legal and got



Summation - Ms. Smith

10345

1 himself comfortable with it at the beginning.

2 And then once he had actually purchased the shares,  
3 he started to become very uncomfortable with the way in which  
4 Mr. Shkreli was trying to exercise control of the shares.

5 So the first way in which he said he was  
6 uncomfortable was this email that was sent by Michael Smith on  
7 December 11, 2012, Government Exhibit 112-12. This is an  
8 email from Mr. Shkreli's assistant, the Fearnow share  
9 recipients with the exception of Mr. Sullivan saying that he  
10 wanted the -- everybody to give him their Scottrade account,  
11 so their brokerage accounts, and to give them a summary of  
12 their trading every day. So basically he was asking everyone  
13 to report back any trading they had done in the Retrophin  
14 stock on a daily basis.

15 And you heard Mr. Pierotti's testimony that his  
16 reaction to this email was that it was a major red flag  
17 because he thought it made clear that Martin had an interest,  
18 at least monitoring if not controlling, what they were doing  
19 with the shares. And so this was kind of first thing that  
20 happened that made him very concerned that Mr. Shkreli was  
21 trying to monitor what everybody was doing with the stock.

22 And we know that the defendant was involved in  
23 setting up the Scottrade account because there's an email  
24 communication between Mr. Biestek and the defendant asking for  
25 a letter, a supporting letter to be drafted so everyone can

Summation - Ms. Smith

10346

1 get their shares deposited in the Scottrade accounts. And  
2 then the testimony from Mr. Dooley yesterday when Mr. Vaino  
3 tried to open a Scottrade account as well.

4 And then the second thing that Mr. Pierotti  
5 testified that made him very nervous was that Mr. Shkreli  
6 wanted him in the Retrophin office.

7 If you remember, when he was working on Garreco,  
8 Mr. Shkreli said we're going to be switching over to  
9 Retrophin, everyone needs to get out and get find their own  
10 space. But once he got the Fearnow shares, he wanted  
11 Mr. Pierotti to report to the Retrophin office. And it made  
12 Mr. Pierotti very uncomfortable. He thought this was another  
13 way in which Mr. Shkreli was trying to control him. He was  
14 also concerned that he might get inside information by being  
15 in the office that would prevent him from trading the shares.

16 So he had a conversation with the defendant around  
17 the same time. And he asked the defendant what he should do  
18 and the defendant said, Well, you should come into the office  
19 but you can just close your door so you don't get any inside  
20 information.

21 And the defendant -- and Mr. Pierotti said that  
22 didn't satisfy him because Mr. Shkreli often talked about  
23 inside information and he was concerned about being in the  
24 office and having Mr. Shkreli try and actually control what he  
25 was doing with the shares.

Summation - Ms. Smith

10347

1           And Mr. Pierotti also testified about the  
2 conversation that he had with Mr. Shkreli about trading to  
3 affect the volume. So that Mr. Shkreli had made some  
4 statements about trading the shares back and forth or trying  
5 to generate increased liquidity. Which is similar to that  
6 email we just looked at where Mr. Shkreli encouraged other  
7 people to do that as well.

8           So it's very clear that at this time Mr. Shkreli is  
9 very fixated on the price and volume of Retrophin stock; how  
10 it's doing. And, again, this is all in the same time period  
11 of that liquidation sale and that's why it's so important to  
12 keep the price of Retrophin stock up.

13           And then we get to Government Exhibit 510, which is  
14 a conversation between the defendant and Mr. Shkreli, and at  
15 it's a very significant moment because it shows the  
16 defendant's knowledge of the plan and his understanding of  
17 Mr. Shkreli's attempts to control the stock and the reasons  
18 why he is doing it to keep the price up.

19           So this is December 28th, 2012 which, again, is  
20 right around the same time as that liquidation email. They're  
21 very concerned about the success and the ability of Retrophin  
22 to survive. And Mr. Shkreli says at the bottom: The stock is  
23 trading like crazy. Someone is selling the shit out of it.  
24 And the defendant responds: I don't know, there is no  
25 freely-trading stock other than you guys and the 500K that

Summation - Ms. Smith

10348

1 Fearnow has.

2 Remember that 500K, 400 of it is actually being held  
3 in escrow, so it's not even being traded. And there's no  
4 freely-trading stock other than you guys.

5 And by that he mean the Fearnow shares. And he  
6 knows that the purposes of giving it to Martin Shkreli's  
7 associates is that Martin Shkreli can control it. And they're  
8 surprised because some one is, quote, selling the shit out of  
9 it and it's not -- they think they know kind of who has it and  
10 what they're doing with the stock.

11 And Mr. Shkreli in response says: Uh-huh. And then  
12 the defendant says: I'm going to confer with the transfer  
13 agent that there's no other freely-trading stock.

14 And we heard during Amy Merrill's testimony, which  
15 is Government Exhibit 115-51, that the defendant, in fact, on  
16 that same day reached out to Amy Merrill and asked for the  
17 float. And the float is the amount of free-trading stock for  
18 any particular company.

19 And you can see she wrote out is 2.51 --  
20 2.5 million. They're about 19,000 additional shares and there  
21 were some Desert Gateway legacy shares kind of hanging out  
22 there. But she's confirming that other than those 2.5 million  
23 free trading they know about and they think they know what's  
24 going on with them, there is a very, very small number of  
25 additional shares out there. So this is the defendant

Summation - Ms. Smith

10349

1 confirming that information.

2 And then in the next line, this is Government  
3 Exhibit 504, going back to Mr. Shkreli and you can see the  
4 bottom email is actually the defendant in the Standard  
5 Registrar email that then gets forwarded to Mr. Shkreli. And  
6 the defendant says: FYI. And then Mr. Shkreli says:  
7 Amazing, someone shorted 60K in the last two days. And then  
8 the defendant's response in red there is: How will they  
9 cover?

10 And this is really significant. If you remember Deb  
11 Oremland talked about short selling. And she was using the  
12 analogy with the umbrellas. And she said: If you want to  
13 short a stock, which is take a bet that the stock will go down  
14 you need to actually have additional shares available to  
15 borrow in order to locate them and know that if you --  
16 depending on how the bet shakes out, you can get those shares  
17 available to cover the short position.

18 And so what the defendant is basically saying is  
19 Mr. Shkreli is saying there's 60,000 shares that have been  
20 shorted, and the defendant is saying: How will they cover:  
21 Who is out there making shares available to actually use for  
22 theses short trades. And so this is -- this response how will  
23 they cover? Shows that, again, they think they have a handle  
24 on what's going on with all of the free-trading shares, the  
25 same as the prior email.

Summation - Ms. Smith

10350

1           And Mr. Shkreli's response is: I think it might be  
2 Tim selling. And, again, there's there concern that  
3 somebody's not going along with the plan. They're taking  
4 their shares and they just selling them like crazy and its  
5 affecting the share price. And we will see when we get to the  
6 end of the section, the charts that Deb Oremland did you can  
7 see the spike on these days where those -- that enormous  
8 amount of selling is going on by Mr. Shkreli.

9           And you know that Mr. Shkreli has decided that it's  
10 Tim Pierotti because they have a conversation around the same  
11 time where Mr. Shkreli wants him to return the shares. To  
12 stop selling, to stop affecting the Retrophin stock price and  
13 to give the shares back to Mr. Shkreli. And surprised that it  
14 was a very contentious phone call and a lot of yelling. And  
15 he refused to actually give the shares back.

16           And so what did the defendant and Mr. Shkreli do  
17 next? Because they haven't been able to kind of force  
18 Mr. Pierotti to give the shares back and he's selling them.  
19 They want to actually make sure that he can't sell them. So  
20 they hatch a plan to basically provide him with inside  
21 information to make him unable to sell. Because if you have  
22 inside information, you can't necessarily trade on the stock  
23 depending on what's going on.

24           And so he won't come into the office. And he won't  
25 give the shares back, so what are they going to do? And so

Summation - Ms. Smith

10351

1 Government Exhibit 507 you heard a lot of testimony about  
2 bringing somebody over the wall, which just basically means  
3 I'm going to tell you this and once you have that information,  
4 insider information, you won't be able to trade for a certain  
5 period of time because you have that information.

6 And so Mr. Shkreli's drafts an email that's going to  
7 be sent to all the Fearnow share recipients, basically force  
8 them to get inside information so they can't trade any more.  
9 And they're going to do this to creatively stop Mr. Pierotti  
10 from selling because they don't like what he's doing to the  
11 shares price.

12 And Mr. Greebel responds to Mr. Shkreli's suggestion  
13 saying: Cory, whether you want defend all or identify who  
14 your sending it to.

15 And then the email chain continues and Mr. Shkreli  
16 and the defendant debate whether if they send the email this  
17 will actually work. Can you actually bring someone over the  
18 wall in an email. Will Mr. Pierotti read it. How can we make  
19 sure he reads it. They're kind of planning to make sure that  
20 this works.

21 And then Government Exhibit 112-24 is the actual  
22 over-the-wall email that gets sent to Mr. Pierotti and all the  
23 rest of the Fearnow share recipients. And in the email  
24 Mr. Shkreli says exactly what his concerns are: I must admit  
25 to you all I've been extremely stressed about Retrophin, the

Summation - Ms. Smith

10352

1 declining stock price is particularly alarming. Please  
2 consider that if you deposited your founder stock, will you  
3 consider it making unshorable. So, again, this is this idea  
4 that only these people can make it available to trade.

5 As we were contemplating these financings, it is not  
6 a good idea for the stock to be declining. Obviously now that  
7 you are over the wall you may not sell any stock until the  
8 transactions are completed.

9 So, again, the purpose of this email was to control  
10 Tim Pierotti's shares. And he response to the email and  
11 Mr. Mulleady's writes back and doubles down. And he says:  
12 Anyone who can sell is on this email. Because this email is  
13 the Fearnow share recipients. And he says: I'd like to  
14 mention that the stock is falling on high volume and anyone  
15 that can sell it is on this email. So the four investors that  
16 are taking advantage of the recent liquidity to reconfirm  
17 their long-term success of Retrophin. And basically not just  
18 go ahead and sell your stock.

19 And you heard Mr. Pierotti's response to the  
20 over-the-wall email and he talks about it. He basically says  
21 he had the experience of being brought over the wall and it's  
22 worked many times. It doesn't happen over email. You don't  
23 do it without someone's permission. It's not something that's  
24 done as like a sword to prevent somebody from doing something.  
25 You're bringing someone over the wall because you want them to



Summation - Ms. Smith

10353

1 be involved in the transaction and in doing that you ask them  
2 if they want that information first. And that's at transcript  
3 page 5980.

4 And as we know, the over-the-wall email itself  
5 didn't work because Mr. Pierotti continued to sell. And so  
6 the next step that the defendant and Mr. Shkreli take to try  
7 and prevent this is an email that's Government Exhibit 511.

8 Mr. Shkreli sends to Mr. Greebel this email which is  
9 a litigation email that he's drafting to send to Mr. Pierotti  
10 and he's checking out what the defendant thinks of it first.

11 And Mr. Shkreli writes: Hi, Tim. I decided to  
12 commence litigation against you for failing to honor the  
13 agreement we made in our office on December 10th. You agreed  
14 to work for MSMB, growing and managing its investments and  
15 engaging with me on new opportunities. Instead, you have  
16 failed to come to the office and will not even return my phone  
17 calls. This is classic cut bait fraud.

18 And then Mr. Shkreli's suggesting that the agreement  
19 was that Mr. Pierotti would receive the shares in return for  
20 working, and you can see it very clearly here, "MSMB."

21 At this point we know that Mr. Pierotti had stopped  
22 working for MSMB Consumer and for Retrophin and was doing  
23 these side projects. The purchase agreement that he had,  
24 which we will see was with Troy Fearnow, it was not an  
25 agreement with Mr. Shkreli. There was nothing in that written

Summation - Ms. Smith

10354

1 agreement that suggested that he would be working in return  
2 for receiving the shares.

3 And the defendant's response that same day is: Very  
4 risky, given your agreement was. Could be opening a much  
5 bigger can of worms.

6 And so the concern that the defendant is expressing  
7 is if you go after Mr. Pierotti, you will be opening up a much  
8 bigger can of worms. This whole scheme might actually come to  
9 light. And you don't actually have any control over  
10 Mr. Pierotti because he purchased those shares through that  
11 agreement and you should maybe think about whether this is a  
12 good idea before you move forward.

13 And the top email on this chain which isn't on the  
14 screen here is Mr. Shkreli asking the defendant to call him.  
15 And that's on January 2nd.

16 And that same day after Mr. Shkreli asks the  
17 defendant to call him, he goes ahead, and this is Government  
18 Exhibit 112-25, and sends the email to Mr. Pierotti, the  
19 litigation email. It has a little bit of a different language  
20 in it. So instead of saying you agreed to work for MSMB,  
21 which is the first draft. It says you agreed to work for me.

22 And we'll see when we get to the litigation that  
23 changes again. So originally it was you agreed to work for  
24 MSMB. Then it was agreed work for me. And when we get to the  
25 litigation, they claim he agreed to work for Retrophin. So

Summation - Ms. Smith

10355

1 that story changes multiple times over the course of the  
2 spring, and it's not consistent with what actually happened in  
3 December.

4           The next thing that happens is after the litigation  
5 email is sent, there was testimony, and you'll see it in this  
6 letter that Mr. Pierotti had told Mr. Biestek where he had  
7 actually put his shares in some sort of small brokerage. And  
8 then Mr. Shkreli got that information from someone, but  
9 Mr. Pierotti had only given it to Mr. Biestek, and actually  
10 called the brokerage house and froze the brokerage account.  
11 And it took Mr. Pierotti the entire month of January to get  
12 his shares out and put them somewhere else.

13           And so you'll see that in the chart as well. When  
14 the over the wall didn't work, and the litigation email didn't  
15 work, Mr. Shkreli actually went and tried to freeze the shares  
16 at the actual brokerage account.

17           What happens next after that is that at Government  
18 Exhibit 112-27, Mr. Shkreli threatened Mr. Pierotti's wife to  
19 get him to return the free-trading shares. And we saw that  
20 letter, which is postmarked January 15th, 2013.

21           And we also know that Mr. Shkreli had a conversation  
22 with the defendant around the same time where he said: I have  
23 a funny Tim update for you. So the defendant and Mr. Shkreli  
24 are discussing the steps that Mr. Shkreli is taking with  
25 respect to Mr. Pierotti at the very same time that he is

Summation - Ms. Smith

10356

1 sending this threatening letter.

2 And the letter itself, as you remember, talked about  
3 freezing Mr. Pierotti's stock account in the brokerage firm.  
4 That he's a very determined person. That he was going to get  
5 the shares back. He talks about making Mr. Pierotti's wife  
6 and his four children homeless. It's a long letter and it's  
7 very clear that he's intent at all costs on controlling the  
8 shares and having them returned to him.

9 And then the defendant gets involved in negotiating  
10 with Mr. Pierotti to try and get the shares back. And this is  
11 an email that's sent by the defendant, February 14th, 2013,  
12 and it includes the following language which is that they're  
13 discussion what the proposal for how much money is Mr. Shkreli  
14 going to give Mr. Pierotti for his shares. And he says in the  
15 second sentence: You either currently own or are entitled to  
16 50,000 shares held by Fearnow. And those are the 50,000  
17 shares that were supposed to be for Mr. Pierotti that were  
18 being held in escrow.

19 And at the last sentence he also says: As for the  
20 Fearnow stock, the company wants that assigned to it and the  
21 company will deal with Fearnow.

22 And so this is clear evidence that the defendant is  
23 assisting Mr. Shkreli in trying to control the shares.  
24 Because the first agreement the defendant himself drafted, as  
25 we can see, is between Mr. Troy Fearnow and Mr. Pierotti. And

Summation - Ms. Smith

10357

1 Mr. Shkreli is not anywhere in this agreement. And so the  
2 idea that the defendant is saying you don't have any title to  
3 those 50,000 shares is completely contradicted by the purchase  
4 agreement that he himself drafted.

5 The other thing in Mr. -- in the defendant's email  
6 is that the Fearnow stocks the company wants that assigned to  
7 and the company will deal with Fearnow. As we will see when  
8 those shares actually get redistributed at the end in  
9 connection with the Pierotti agreement, they go back to  
10 Mr. Shkreli, they don't go back to the company.

11 And there are a couple additional communications  
12 between the defendant and Mr. Pierotti around the same time.  
13 And Mr. Pierotti in Government Exhibit 518 is responding to  
14 Mr. Greebel's email. And in this email, as we saw before, he  
15 cuts and pastes portions of that threatening letter that  
16 Mr. Shkreli sent him in the email and sends it to the  
17 defendant.

18 And Mr. Pierotti testified, and you can see it as  
19 part of the email chain that the defendant didn't ask about  
20 the letter, didn't seem concerned about, it didn't seem  
21 surprised. And, you know, when he forwards the response to  
22 Mr. Shkreli, he doesn't say what are you talking about with  
23 the threats?

24 The threats are important because those are never  
25 disclosed to the board. The story that gets told to the

Summation - Ms. Smith

10358

1 board, as we'll see in a minute about the Pierotti litigation,  
2 is completely different than what actually happened, and  
3 they're not disclosed to anybody else at Retrophin, and  
4 they're not disclosed to the Katten partner that ultimately  
5 winds working on the Tim Pierotti litigation. If you  
6 remember, Howard Cotton testified that he didn't learn about  
7 the threat until January 2014 and this is in February 2013.

8 And then the final email in that chain that I just  
9 want to show you is in this negotiation Mr. Shkreli is telling  
10 the defendant what he is willing to offer to Mr. Pierotti.  
11 And one of the things he offers is zero restitution  
12 permanently and I will stay away from him and his family.

13 So he is suggesting that one of the things he can  
14 offer Mr. Pierotti that he will not harass him or harass his  
15 family. And the defendant says that he'll counter with what  
16 he wrote.

17 So this is the defendant doing Mr. Shkreli's dirty  
18 work with respect to the shares. And then Mr. Shkreli said:  
19 It was very important we get personal and say exactly what I  
20 wrote.

21 And as we know from Mr. Pierotti's testimony, these  
22 negotiations don't work out. And the defendant and  
23 Mr. Shkreli have Retrophin actually sue Mr. Pierotti to get  
24 the shares back. So none of these other steps work, they sue  
25 Mr. Pierotti and they go forward with the lawsuit based on

Summation - Ms. Smith

10359

1 Mr. Shkreli's representations and representations made by the  
2 other coconspirators who received Fearnow shares.

3 And we know that towards the end of the litigation,  
4 Mr. Pierotti was actually trying to get his remaining escrow  
5 Fearnow shares out, and both the defendant and Mr. Shkreli  
6 prevented him from doing that. So that's testimony at  
7 transcript 6029.

8 And then at Government Exhibit 115-48, the  
9 defendant's communicating directly with the transfer agent and  
10 is saying to put a hold not only on Mr. Pierotti's Fearnow  
11 shares but all the remaining Fearnow shares. And we're going  
12 to see all those emails where they're controlling and  
13 directing the Fearnow shares at different points. So this is  
14 a clear example of the defendant and Mr. Shkreli controlling  
15 those shares, which according to the purchase agreement have  
16 actually been owned by other people.

17 And then finally, ultimately, Mr. Pierotti resolved  
18 the litigation with Retrophin and transfers those 50,000  
19 Fearnow shares to Mr. Shkreli, not to the company. And you  
20 remember how Cotton testified that he didn't know why those  
21 shares went to Mr. Shkreli personally instead of back to  
22 Retrophin.

23 And if we look at Mr. Richardson's testimony about  
24 what Mr. Shkreli said about the Pierotti litigation, we know  
25 Mr. Shkreli was not honest with the board about what had

Summation - Ms. Smith

10360

1 happened.

2 Then Mr. Shkreli gave an update basically saying  
3 that he had given his own shares to Mr. Pierotti because  
4 Mr. Pierotti had fallen on hard times and then Mr. Pierotti  
5 refused to give them back, and that's what the lawsuit was  
6 about.

7 And then you see at Government Exhibit 286, these  
8 are actually some of the board minutes that were drafted by  
9 the defendant. It's Government Exhibit 286 and they were  
10 provided to Ms. Valeur-Jensen only in September 2014 after  
11 multiple requests, and they never went to Mr. Richardson or  
12 anybody else to approve.

13 But what the defendant wrote about the meeting was  
14 that Mr. Shkreli advised that the stock, the 50,000 shares was  
15 originally Mr. Shkreli's and that Mr. Pierotti made promises  
16 to him which caused him to transfer the stock to Mr. Pierotti.

17 And we know that those Fearnow shares were actually  
18 purchased directly by Mr. Pierotti, they never were  
19 Mr. Shkreli's. If they were anybody's to begin with, they  
20 were Retrophin's. And so this is what's being said at the  
21 board meeting by Mr. Shkreli, and the defendant doesn't  
22 correct him, doesn't provide the accurate information about  
23 what happened.

24 And so that is the Tim Pierotti story and the  
25 clearest evidence of the defendant's knowledge, intent --



Summation - Ms. Smith

10361

1 knowledge of the plan and intent to perpetuate and to help  
2 control the price and trading volume of Retrophin stock.

3 The other evidence, in addition to what you've seen,  
4 are the emails where the defendant and Mr. Shkreli are moving  
5 around the Fearnow shares that were in escrow.

6 So we looked at this slide in the beginning,  
7 Government Exhibit 479, but originally they decided how many  
8 shares everyone would get, and then they held back a portion  
9 from everybody until that second payment was made for the  
10 additional second payment for the shell.

11 And we can see that that shell payment gets made in  
12 Government Exhibit 910-E in February of 2013.

13 And we also know that the defendant described that  
14 share -- that shell payment as a payment to a consultant  
15 related to a reverse merger instead of as a payment for the  
16 shell itself.

17 And then as a result of paying that original  
18 payment, they get access to those escrow shares. And remember  
19 they have been working to control all the Fearnow shares that  
20 were in escrow that were available to freely trade before.

21 And so what you saw, particularly through the  
22 testimony of Agent Delgado, is a series of emails where the  
23 defendant and Mr. Shkreli are talking about the exercise and  
24 control over the shares and how they're going to move them  
25 around for Mr. Shkreli's benefit. And this is Government

Summation - Ms. Smith

10362

1 Exhibit 542.

2 And they're showing the sources of the Fearnow  
3 shares; TF and MB, RT. And you heard Mr. Delgado testify that  
4 the Tom Fernandez, Marek Biestek, Ron Tilles, these are all  
5 the different people whose names -- in the names they were  
6 held and here they are going to get used. So LR is Lindsay  
7 Rosenwald. They're basically moving these shares around for  
8 Mr. Shkreli's benefit.

9 And in Government Exhibit 542, the defendant is  
10 discussing the concerns that he has with some of these shares,  
11 and he talks about something called the Pierotti problem,  
12 which is at the bottom of the email here, which is the email  
13 at 5:22 p.m. His concern is that, you know, because they  
14 should set this up so that these are agreements between Troy  
15 Fearnow and whoever purchased the stock, that if they don't  
16 agree to go along with the plan that they set up in the  
17 beginning, then they're going to have a Pierotti problem,  
18 which is when someone goes rogue and they take their shares  
19 and they don't let Mr. Shkreli control them.

20 So a lot of this is discussing what's the best way  
21 to move these shares so we don't wind up in a situation where  
22 someone doesn't go along with what we want. And Mr. Shkreli  
23 says in response: If that's to happen with anonymous and the  
24 five people doing it don't know exactly where it's going.

25 So they're trying to move all these shares around

Summation - Ms. Smith

10363

1 with the least amount of information given to the people who  
2 held them on the hopes that they're just going to continue to  
3 go along with the plan.

4 And you can see that there are a bunch of these  
5 emails. I'm not going to walk through all the details of each  
6 one. But farther up in the same email of Government  
7 Exhibit 522 they refer to the purchasers of the Fearnow shares  
8 as the purchasers in quotes.

9 And then there's additional discussions, for  
10 example, Government Exhibit 543 about how to figure out how to  
11 get the shares to other people; worrying about Fearnow risk,  
12 which is the same idea as the Pierotti problem if someone  
13 doesn't go along.

14 Government Exhibit 544, further discussions where  
15 Mr. Shkreli says to the defendant that everybody will do as  
16 directed.

17 And then Government Exhibit 579, is talking again  
18 about how the different shares will be allocated, and you can  
19 see that some go to the Rosenwald settlement, some go to  
20 Kocher, many of them go back to Mr. Shkreli himself at some  
21 point.

22 And all of these movements are discussed by the  
23 defendant and Mr. Shkreli at the time and he decides what they  
24 need them for, what they need them to do, and everybody else  
25 goes along with them.

Summation - Ms. Smith

10364

1 And the defendant is involved in papering this.  
2 There are agreements that are signed for the shares transfer.  
3 But as you can see, there's an assumption that everybody's  
4 going to do as directed.

5 And then this is the last example, Government  
6 Exhibit 650, talks about what's left of the Fearnow stock.  
7 They're talking about in December of 2013. They talk about  
8 how Mr. Kocher got a certain number of shares from Mr. Vaino's  
9 portion. Lindsay Rosenwald got shares. Who still has stock  
10 available. Who's still left in the piggy bank that we can  
11 move their stock around.

12 And so these emails again show Mr. Shkreli  
13 exercising control over the stock and control that is not  
14 disclosed in the 13B, and control that was designed to make  
15 sure the price and volume of Retrophin stock will be at a  
16 certain point.

17 And finally, as we talked about before, you know, a  
18 conspiracy is an agreement. There doesn't need to be --  
19 sorry, one thing I just want to make sure I make clear. I  
20 apologize.

21 So Government Exhibit 113-17, I said that this is an  
22 example of where Mr. Shkreli -- and if I didn't say  
23 Mr. Shkreli, I apologize. Again, 113-17 is the email that  
24 Mr. Shkreli sends in connection with Citrin's request. And  
25 there's that long spreadsheet of all of the payments that are

Summation - Ms. Smith

10365

1 going out of Retrophin in the beginning of 2013.

2 And Citrin is asking: What are all of these  
3 payments for? And there's a column at the end says: Martin's  
4 comments. And so Mr. Shkreli goes through the spreadsheet and  
5 talks about what each payment is for. And Mr. Greebel is  
6 copied as a recipient of that email. That's Government  
7 Exhibit 113-17.

8 And Mr. Shkreli describes in that email that  
9 Mr. Greebel received that the payment to Heskett, Rachale, is  
10 for, quote, a consultant-related reverse merger. So if I  
11 misspoke about who sent and received that email I apologize.

12 So just turning to the last section, which is,  
13 again, because it's a conspiracy, you don't need to show  
14 success. So the plan to do this is enough to commit the  
15 crime. But, in fact, as we saw from looking at the actual  
16 trading records, there's evidence that the plan was  
17 successful.

18 And we talked about Ms. Oremland, which is  
19 Government Exhibit 992, this is the chart of the trading  
20 volume and stock for Retrophin for the entire period from the  
21 reverse merger to September 30th, 2014, which is the date on  
22 which Mr. Shkreli was removed from Retrophin.

23 And you can see that in the very beginning the  
24 volume is the blue at the bottom and the red is the stock  
25 price. And you can see that until they uplist on NASDAQ in

Summation - Ms. Smith

10366

1 2014 the volume is very, very low.

2 And the Deb Oremland had a second chart, which is  
3 Government Exhibit 995. And this is the chart I was  
4 mentioning a little bit earlier. So this the key time period  
5 where it's important to make sure that the price of Retrophin  
6 stays stable, because this is -- until they get the money for  
7 the pipe and can ensure that Retrophin is actually a  
8 successful company, they need to make sure that the price  
9 isn't greater.

10 And remember I told you that you can see on this  
11 chart Mr. Pierotti's sales and the point at which they were  
12 worried about Pierotti's selling and wondering who would be  
13 selling because they know everybody who's has free-trading  
14 stock and how they were able to short the stock.

15 So if you look at those two big spikes there, and  
16 the purple is Mr. Pierotti. You can see that there was an  
17 incredible amount of stock he was selling on those two days,  
18 which is what tipped the defendant and Mr. Shkreli off to the  
19 fact that he wasn't following the plan and he went ahead and  
20 just sold massive amounts of his own stock.

21 And you can see that otherwise the amount of trading  
22 by the Fearnow share recipients is very, very low during that  
23 period. And, in fact, many of them didn't trade at all. And  
24 we heard from Ms. Oremland that the affect on price if there  
25 are fewer shares available to trade, is that there's more of a

Summation - Ms. Smith

10367

1 chance that the price would remain stable.

2 And so she was asked: Is it beneficial for  
3 controlling shareholders to limit of amount of shares  
4 available for sale? And she said, "Yes." And she explained  
5 that because then you have a less likelihood that the share  
6 price can decline if there's too much stock on the market.

7 And then finally you also heard from the defendant's  
8 expert, Mr. Lewis, saying that if a group of investors wanted  
9 to prevent the price of a stock from dropping, what would you  
10 expect them to do? I would expect them to buy the stock or  
11 hold it.

12 And that's what they were trying to do and that's  
13 why they were so upset that Mr. Pierotti was selling in such a  
14 large quantities without consulting with Mr. Shkreli and not  
15 in accordance with the agreement that they reached.

16 And Mr. Lewis also testified that they if wanted to  
17 keep the price stable, they wouldn't sell the stock or not buy  
18 it and it might not transact at all.

19 And so that is the evidence for Count Two. And as I  
20 submit that it's overwhelming evidence of, again, the  
21 defendant's knowledge to knowingly and intentionally join the  
22 conspiracy, and the existence of the conspiracy with  
23 Mr. Shkreli and others to control the price and trading volume  
24 of Retrophin stock.

25 With this conspiracy, as I told you, there's the

Summation - Ms. Smith

10368

1 additional requirement of the overt act. And we have listed  
2 them out here. You'll see in the jury instructions that there  
3 are a list of specific acts that are taken. They all  
4 correspond to a document or email that is in evidence. And  
5 I'll just give you two examples.

6 Overt act D is Government Exhibit 503. And it's  
7 just the defendant sending the draft 13D to Mr. Shkreli.

8 And then overt act K is Government Exhibit 579, and  
9 it was an email that they were discussing how they whether  
10 going to move Fearnow stock to accomplish some of the  
11 settlement agreements.

12 And Mr. Shkreli says in response to Mr. Greebel's  
13 question: Take from anyone, I don't care. Do the math. And  
14 that's a really, really clear example of how he's exercising  
15 control over these shares because you can take them from  
16 anyone, anyone in this group.

17 As with the first conspiracy, we've also  
18 demonstrated clearly there were coconspirators, clearly the  
19 defendant and Mr. Shkreli, but also the other individuals who  
20 had Fearnow stock and allowed it to be controlled by  
21 Mr. Shkreli, including Mr. Fernandez, Mr. Mulleady, Mr. Vaino,  
22 Mr. Tilles, and Mr. Sullivan.

23 And, again, on the venue point that there had to be  
24 act in the Eastern District of New York, we know that the  
25 Fearnow shares themselves were distributed to at least two



Summation - Ms. Smith

10369

1 people in Brooklyn.

2 And then finally, in addition to all of the other  
3 overwhelming evidence you've seen so far, there are a couple  
4 of additional pieces of evidence that I want you to think  
5 about with respect to both Counts One and Count Two. And this  
6 is evidence that helps, in addition, answer the two questions:  
7 Why would the defendant do what he did. And how do you know  
8 that he acted with the intent to defraud.

9 And as we said all along, the motive was money, and  
10 we're going to walk through that evidence. And we've also  
11 said all along that you know he acted with the intent to  
12 defraud because every time he was given the opportunity to  
13 choose between helping his client, Retrophin, and Mr. Shkreli,  
14 he chose Mr. Shkreli.

15 And so on the question of salary. There was a lot  
16 of testimony from Mr. Silverman and then all the Katten  
17 attorneys about how an income partner's salary is calculated  
18 and there's all these factors that are considered.  
19 Mr. Silverman said it was a holistic calculation.

20 But the truth of the matter is he also said that  
21 realization rate is really important. And realization rate,  
22 as you heard, is you're going to bill a bunch time but those  
23 people actually have to pay it. Because if they don't pay it,  
24 the law firm doesn't get any money, and you don't get any  
25 credit for bringing in business when the people aren't paying.

Summation - Ms. Smith

10370

1           And we can see that in these whole hard numbers for  
2 the defendant. For fiscal year 2013, and if you remember the  
3 fiscal year goes through January 2013. And so fiscal year  
4 2013 through January 2013. The defendant's salary was  
5 \$355,000. And the Retrophin realization rate was only  
6 65 percent.

7           In fiscal year 2014, the defendant's salary was  
8 \$900,000. And that's because the Retrophin realization rate  
9 was 101 percent.

10           And then in fiscal year 2015, after the defendant  
11 was removed from his position as CEO, the defendant's salary  
12 went back down to \$423,000 and the realization rate for  
13 Retrophin was 34 percent.

14           So it's very clear that Retrophin was the key driver  
15 of the defendant's salary. And you heard this from  
16 Mr. Silverman that the increase to the \$900,000 was because of  
17 Retrophin, and the decrease was because of Retrophin stopped  
18 paying.

19           And we also know that the defendant's rank within  
20 the firm changed. When he was making the 350,000, he was  
21 ranked somewhere in the middle of all the income partners. By  
22 the time he was making \$900,000, he was the number one income  
23 partner of Katten in the entire country.

24           (Continued on next page.)

25

Summation - Ms. Smith

10371

1 MS. SMITH: We talked about the outstanding bills  
2 at the end of 2012. I wanted to lay them out for you. You  
3 can see in September, November, December, Retrophin owes in  
4 excess of \$600,000 to Katten for legal bills, that's in  
5 addition to any legal bills racked up as the defendant is  
6 working on things like the reverse merger. So this was a  
7 really significant driver for the defendant. You can see  
8 that in all of the e-mails that he's exchanging with  
9 Mr. Shkreli about needing to get paid. If we look at the  
10 amounts that were paid to Katten in total \$6.3 million.  
11 Prior to October 2012, it was about \$830,000. And after  
12 November 2012 it was about \$5.6 million. There was an  
13 incredible incentive to make sure that Retrophin stayed a  
14 viable client and continued to pay.

15 It wasn't just the work that the defendant was  
16 doing, as we heard. He brought in work for other partners,  
17 which generated business for the company, which increased the  
18 amount of billings when he was able to collect on them. The  
19 realization was high. It resulted in a higher salary for him.  
20 And not just a higher salary, but a salary almost three times  
21 what he was making before. And in fact, the highest salary  
22 for his type of partner in his firm.

23 Government's Exhibit 514 is just an example of some  
24 of the bills that in that time period, late 2012 January 2013,  
25 the defendant is hounding Mr. Shkreli over and over and over

Summation - Ms. Smith

10372

1 to get the bills paid. That's right at the time of the  
2 creation of the MSMB Capital interest, it's at the time of the  
3 Fearnow share distribution, and the attempt to keep Retrophin  
4 afloat, right before the settlement agreements start.

5 Then in terms of additional knowledge of the  
6 defendant -- additional evidence of the defendant's knowledge  
7 and intent. Again, think about every time there is a decision  
8 between his client, to who he owes a duty, and Mr. Shkreli he  
9 chooses Mr. Shkreli. It is clear that he and Mr. Shkreli are  
10 involved in discussing and figuring out ways in which to get  
11 things done for Mr. Shkreli that are not to the benefit of  
12 Retrophin.

13 There is this discussion in Government's Exhibit  
14 535, if you remember during Mr. Massella's testimony, that he  
15 was asking about what the employment agreement was for  
16 Mr. Shkreli, if it was \$250,000, because he's looking at some  
17 of the cash payments that are going out to Mr. Shkreli. And  
18 if you remember this e-mail, the defendant forwards to  
19 Mr. Shkreli and says, "Tell him it's a misprint or something  
20 else." By misprint he's talking about the \$250,000 salary.

21 In response Mr. Shkreli says, "It's a misprint."  
22 The defendant says okay. So they are discussing here how to  
23 go back and suggest that Mr. Shkreli's salary should be higher  
24 than what it was reported as. And if you can see, it is  
25 defendant who suggests that the \$250,000 is a misprint.

Summation - Ms. Smith

10373

1           If you remember from Mr. Massella, this is  
2 Government's Exhibit 537, further down in the chain,  
3 Mr. Massella says, "We disclosed the \$250,000 as a salary all  
4 over the place. If it was a misprint we're going to have to  
5 restate all of our financials." The defendant and Mr. Shkreli  
6 have an additional conversation about what they can do to  
7 avoid the restatement but make sure that Mr. Shkreli gets paid  
8 more money. There is a discussion about reviewing his  
9 employment agreement, what they can do to date it to a certain  
10 point, make it retroactive, get him a one-time bonus.

11           The other thing I want to you remember is the SEC  
12 investigation. As there was testimony, Mr. Richardson didn't  
13 learn about it until January 2014. So again, not only is he  
14 not told about the settlement agreement and consulting  
15 agreements, and the true purpose, but he's not told that the  
16 SEC is looking into the hedge funds. You know that's in part  
17 because Mr. Richardson didn't invest in MSMB Capital  
18 originally.

19           And then in the spring of 2014 Mr. Shkreli asked  
20 Mr. Richardson to go talk to the SEC. Mr. Shkreli tells  
21 Mr. Richardson that SEC investigation is based on disgruntled  
22 employees. Mr. Richardson goes to the defendant to check with  
23 him before he goes to give his testimony. The defendant says  
24 in this discussion that they have that his understanding of  
25 what the SEC complaint was about and he said very similar to

Summation - Ms. Smith

10374

1 what Mr. Shkreli had said, this was likely a disgruntled  
2 employee that had filed a complaint. Mr. Greebel felt it  
3 would be very useful for me and one or two MSMB investors to  
4 go along.

5           You know that this isn't accurate information. You  
6 know that the defendant knew that Darren Blanton, Mr. Shkreli  
7 suspected that Darren Blanton, who was an angry MSMB investor,  
8 had been the one that complained. And you also knew that in  
9 the discussions that he had with the defendant and Rosensaft  
10 that there were angry investors. You also know from  
11 Mr. Rosensaft, that the defendant never told Mr. Rosensaft  
12 that he discussed with Mr. Richardson going in to talk to the  
13 SEC. And in fact, that he didn't have any memory that  
14 Mr. Richardson had talked to the SEC during the time of the  
15 SEC investigation. So the defendant is withholding from the  
16 individual dealing with the SEC investigation the fact that he  
17 talked to Mr. Richardson about his SEC interview.

18           Then you remember Mr. Richardson testified that when  
19 he went in and talked to the SEC he was very surprised and  
20 upset because Retrophin came up a number of times. Although  
21 the SEC said that the focus of their investigation wasn't  
22 Retrophin, they asked him a lot of questions about how  
23 Retrophin had been valued, they asked about the Valeant deal,  
24 they asked a number of questions about Retrophin. When  
25 Mr. Richardson came out he was very angry and went back to the

Summation - Ms. Smith

10375

1 defendant and he said, why didn't you tell me they were going  
2 to ask about Retrophin? That's the whole reason I came to you  
3 in the first place. And the defendant said, that surprises  
4 me, I didn't expect Retrophin to be mentioned at all.

5 Remember that Mr. Richardson went in to talk to the  
6 SEC in March of 2014. You heard from Mr. Rosensaft that  
7 Retrophin had received a subpoena for the SEC investigation in  
8 November of 2013, so five months earlier. You know from the  
9 bank records -- the time records that that subpoena requested  
10 information from Retrophin related to Valeant and the  
11 valuation of Retrophin's assets in the MSMB entities. And you  
12 know from the time records that Mr. Greebel was involved in  
13 gathering and forwarding documents to people working on the  
14 SEC investigations on those topics.

15 So while the focus of the SEC investigation may not  
16 have been Retrophin, there is no question that the defendant  
17 understood that they had been asking about Retrophin related  
18 to the Valeant deal and valuation, the exact things that came  
19 up in Mr. Richardson's interview. And yet he expressed to  
20 Mr. Richardson that he was surprised that Retrophin had come  
21 up. Again this conversation and the fact that Mr. Richardson  
22 went in was never communicated to Mr. Rosensaft.

23 Also I want to talk to about the SEC indemnification  
24 bill. If you remember, Mr. Richardson was asked whether the  
25 Board ever agreed to indemnify or pay for Mr. Shkreli's legal

Summation - Ms. Smith

10376

1 bills in connection with the SEC investigation. So obviously  
2 when Katten is going to work on that investigation they bill  
3 for it. And if you remember from Mr. Rosensaft, they were  
4 originally were billing to MSMB Capital, that was the client.  
5 Then at some point, the defendant said I'm going to move your  
6 time around. And Mr. Rosensaft didn't pay a lot of attention.  
7 At that point his salary wasn't contingent on the realization  
8 rates. You know that Mr. Richardson said the Board never  
9 agreed to indemnify Mr. Shkreli.

10           You heard from Mr. Rosensaft there was this  
11 conversation in the spring of 2014. During that conversation  
12 which was with the defendant and Mr. Shkreli, Mr. Rosensaft  
13 thought the bill for the indemnification for the SEC  
14 investigation had already gone out. He was told during that  
15 discussion that the bill had not been paid. He was told that  
16 the Board had agreed to pay the bill, so agreed to indemnify  
17 Mr. Shkreli for those costs, but they just hadn't gotten  
18 around to formally approving the bill.

19           That was statements that were made by Mr. Shkreli  
20 with the defendant in the room, and the defendant did not  
21 correct him. Keep in mind the defendant is at every Board  
22 meeting, so the defendant would know if the Board had agreed  
23 to pay an indemnification bill.

24           Mr. Rosensaft is surprised and a little upset that  
25 the bill hasn't been paid. He asks the defendant about it



Summation - Ms. Smith

10377

1 again later on in 2014, and the defendant says again that they  
2 just hasn't gotten around to approving it.

3 We know that the indemnification bill did not go  
4 out. We know what happened from the testimony of  
5 Ms. Marsilio. These are the prebills, Government's Exhibit  
6 1271 and 1272. The time for the SEC investigation which  
7 amounted to about \$200,000 in billing, was sitting in the  
8 prebill. So it wasn't going out in the general bills to  
9 Retrophin, it was sitting at Katten in the one area. It was  
10 originally classified under the project Candlestick. Then  
11 reclassified in September under an SEC indemnification matter.

12 And when does the defendant open the SEC  
13 indemnification matter? He opens it on September 29, 2014.  
14 What is the significance of that date? That is the date that  
15 Mr. Richardson and Mr. Aselage go into Mr. Shkreli's office  
16 and say we're going to remove you as CEO because we don't  
17 think that it's a good position for you anymore. There is a  
18 Board meeting tomorrow on September 30, we're going to make it  
19 formal then. That is the day on which the defendant opens up  
20 the SEC indemnification matter for the first time and moved  
21 all the time over into that matter.

22 Then we can see on December -- September 30, 2013,  
23 which is Defense Exhibit 106-41, the defendant then sends that  
24 bill, which is now that time is moved over into this new bill,  
25 he sends to Mr. Shkreli's AOL account. Not to his Retrophin

Summation - Ms. Smith

10378

1 account, to his AOL account, his personal account. He knows  
2 that the Mr. Shkreli has been removed. It hasn't been  
3 formalized because the Board is meeting on September 30, but  
4 he had this conversation and he knows that is what is  
5 happening.

6 It's significant because Retrophin, as you can see  
7 from the billing records is paying millions of dollars to  
8 Katten. At this point a \$200,000 bill is not, in the scope of  
9 that, a tremendous amount of money. The reason that bill  
10 isn't sent out isn't because of the money, it's because of  
11 what the bill is for. It's for the SEC investigation. And  
12 the defendant does not want to send it to Retrophin and risk  
13 having information about the SEC investigation be something  
14 that people are looking at. So he holds that bill. He  
15 doesn't have it paid. And then when he knows that Mr. Shkreli  
16 is being removed, sends it directly to Mr. Shkreli.

17 This leads us into his other actions on the  
18 September 29 and September 30. These are again clear examples  
19 of the defendant choosing to work for Mr. Shkreli and not for  
20 Retrophin, his client. You can see on September 29, again  
21 2014, which is Government's Exhibit 676, that the defendant  
22 sends again to Mr. Shkreli's AOL account, his personal  
23 account, a document, the document that he sends is a draft of  
24 a written consent for majority of stockholders to remove  
25 directors, "I'm available to discuss tonight and also

Summation - Ms. Smith

10379

1 reviewing your EA," or employment agreement, "tonight." Then  
2 attaches a written consent of shareholders to remove the Board  
3 of Board of Directors.

4 So by September 29, 2014, for a variety of reasons  
5 the Board is done with Mr. Shkreli and no longer thinks he can  
6 serve as CEO. Retrophin, the company, is Mr. Greebel's  
7 client. The defendant's client is the company. When the  
8 company decides to remove Mr. Shkreli as CEO, what does he do?  
9 He helps Mr. Shkreli draft a consent that he can use and get  
10 enough shareholders to remove the Board. He's helping  
11 Mr. Shkreli act against the current Board of Directors in  
12 order to ensure that Mr. Shkreli stays as CEO because  
13 Mr. Shkreli is his meal ticket. Mr. Shkreli is his  
14 connection.

15 We know at this point that Meg Valeur-Jensen has  
16 been hired. That Katten is -- there is a concern about  
17 whether Katten is going to continue to do the same amount of  
18 work. He wants to keep Mr. Shkreli in as CEO. There are a  
19 couple of other e-mails in the same time period.

20 Government's Exhibit 686 is a series of e-mails on  
21 September 30, where Mr. Shkreli is asking the defendant to  
22 register new pharmaceutical companies for him. And then they  
23 are also discussing the defendant -- excuse me, Mr. Shkreli's  
24 employment agreement.

25 You heard a lot of testimony about the employment

Summation - Ms. Smith

10380

1 agreement, that it had this clause, this termination clause,  
2 that only allowed Mr. Shkreli to be removed if he was  
3 convicted of a felony. You heard from Mr. Aselage's testimony  
4 and Mr. Richardson's testimony that was an unusual clause,  
5 something they didn't expect to see. You know that the  
6 defendant is the one who circulated the agreement. And that  
7 the Board signed off on the employment agreement, but they had  
8 not been focused by the defendant or anybody else on that  
9 termination provision.

10 So we can see in Government's Exhibit 686 that the  
11 defendant is the using that termination provision to tell  
12 Mr. Shkreli that he can fight his removal as CEO because he  
13 hasn't been convicted of a felony, so he can't be removed.

14 That's advice that he's giving him on September 30,  
15 in addition to the advice that he's giving him on how to  
16 remove the Board. And the help that he's giving him in  
17 creating these new pharmaceutical companies.

18 We know that Mr. Shkreli takes that advice in  
19 Government 290. He turns around, tells the Board you can't  
20 terminate my employment according to the EA. And he provides  
21 the same link to the publicly available version for the EA  
22 that the defendant had sent him earlier.

23 Then finally we can see Government's Exhibit 290  
24 that Mr. Aselage at the bottom writes to the defendant and  
25 Mr. Shkreli and is saying to Mr. Shkreli that, "You have been

Summation - Ms. Smith

10381

1 placed on leave. You have no more authority as CEO." This is  
2 October 4. He says, "Mr. Greebel, you're on very dangerous  
3 ground if you hope to continue to practice law. Suggest you  
4 take a deep breath and think about where you were going with  
5 Martin." The defendant writes back, he takes Mr. Shkreli off  
6 the e-mail. He says, "Steve, I have not advised Martin of  
7 anything." Which we know is not true. Because we just saw  
8 all of the e-mails where he provides the advice of the  
9 employment agreement, how to remove the Board of Directors,  
10 how to set up a new pharmaceutical company. He says, "I take  
11 my ethical obligation seriously. I'm available to discuss  
12 with you."

13 So again this is powerful, powerful evidence that  
14 the defendant is operating against the interest of Retrophin.  
15 He's operating for Mr. Shkreli.

16 I ask you to keep all of that additional evidence in  
17 mind about the defendant's salary, the outstanding bills for  
18 Retrophin, the times at which he chose Mr. Shkreli's interest  
19 over the company's interest in mind when you think about all  
20 of the other overwhelming evidence that we talked about with  
21 respect to Count One and Count Two.

22 The evidence that you've seen shows that the  
23 defendant agreed to help steal from Retrophin. And he agreed  
24 to help lie to investors about Retrophin stock. That he did  
25 it for the money, for hundreds of thousands of dollars. It

Summation - Ms. Smith

10382

1 proves beyond a reasonable doubt that the defendant is guilty  
2 of both conspiracies. The defendant offered what nobody else  
3 in those two conspiracies could offer, he was trusted to  
4 represent Retrophin and he had the legal skills to make what  
5 he was doing, and what Mr. Shkreli was doing and the other  
6 co-conspirators were doing, legitimate. But he betrayed that  
7 trust and he used to his legal skills to commit crimes.

8 After the defense's summation we'll have the  
9 opportunity to come back in front of you again and speak to  
10 you a little bit further about the evidence. At that time  
11 we'll ask you to return the only verdict that is supported by  
12 the evidence and by your common sense, that is that the  
13 defendant is guilty on both counts. Thank you.

14 THE COURT: Maybe we'll give the jury a brief  
15 afternoon break at this time. And then can you hear from the  
16 defense. Thank you. Don't discuss the case.

17 (Jury exits the courtroom.)

18 (Outside the presence of the jury.)

19 THE COURT: Would the defense like to set up on the  
20 podium or wherever you're comfortable. Mr. Dubin, would you  
21 like to use the podium or the mechanical podium?

22 MR. DUBIN: I think the podium, your Honor. But I  
23 won't stay here the whole time, I'll keep my voice up.

24 THE COURT: Mr. Dubin, can you let me know how the  
25 defense summation is split up?

Proceedings

10383

1 MR. DUBIN: By topic.

2 THE COURT: You're going to cover the first half of  
3 it or I just want to find out for purposes of timing because  
4 the court reporters were asking.

5 MR. BRODSKY: I think what will happen is, your  
6 Honor, given the time, I think Mr. Dubin will go for the rest  
7 of the time we have for the jury. We hope he will finish his  
8 part, which should take us through, it will stop short of  
9 probably Count Seven and Eight, but cover other areas. It  
10 will cover the backdating that they allege and some other  
11 areas. And then -- we just didn't think we'd start this late,  
12 but that's fine.

13 THE COURT: We had an hour of argument, as you know,  
14 which I thought was resolved.

15 MR. DUBIN: What time were you stopping today?

16 THE COURT: 5:30 or six. I'd like to go as far as I  
17 can.

18 MR. DUBIN: I can finish my part.

19 THE COURT: The instructions, as you know, are  
20 74-and-a-half pages.

21 MR. DUBIN: I can endeavor to finish my part by six.

22 THE COURT: By six.

23 MR. DUBIN: Then start fresh with Mr. Brodsky.

24 (Jury enters the courtroom.)

25 THE COURT: All jurors are present. If the defense

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10384

1 would like to commence, you may do so.

2 MR. DUBIN: Ladies and gentlemen, Mr. Greebel is an  
3 innocent man. I'll say it again, because it warrants  
4 repeating. He sits there before you today, ladies and  
5 gentlemen, an innocent man, wrongly accused of crimes he did  
6 not commit.

7 Mr. Brodsky stood up here before you, what must seem  
8 like a lifetime ago for many of you, some ten weeks ago, and  
9 said the evidence isn't going to show it. The evidence will  
10 be clear that he committed no crime.

11 You sat here day, after day, after day, and isn't  
12 that exactly what unfolded before you. They can stand up here  
13 and throw around adjectives, it's overwhelming, the proof is  
14 overwhelming. And theory after theory of what an e-mail  
15 meant. And can you assume this because he said, please call  
16 me. They can do that all day. It doesn't make it so.

17 You the 12 of you -- the 14 of you -- are the ones  
18 that make that determination. Overwhelming.

19 One thing that we can all agree on is overwhelming,  
20 I say to you, I say to all assembled today, one thing that is  
21 overwhelming is that this is an innocent man. At a very  
22 minimum, at a very minimum what is overwhelming is that there  
23 is a mountain of reasonable doubt, to say the least.

24 Did I hear this correctly, a few minutes ago did the  
25 prosecution stand up here and said that Martin Shkreli was



Summation - Mr. Dubin

10385

1 this man's meal ticket? That is absurd, ladies and gentlemen.

2           You heard from Mr. Cotton. You heard over and over  
3 and over again, that Mr. Shkreli was representing the  
4 Winklevoss twins of Bitcoin, the Winklevoss twins at the time  
5 when that was just taking off. The Winklevoss twins who  
6 successfully sued Facebook. That a whole book of business  
7 from a retiring partner at Katten was being transitioned over  
8 to Mr. Greebel. But Martin Shkreli was his meal ticket? Just  
9 because they say it doesn't make it so.

10           Witness after witness after witness came in this  
11 courtroom, took that witness stand, and told you the same  
12 thing about Evan Greebel. That he was at all times diligent,  
13 hard-working, always professional. And that he maintained his  
14 professionalism even in the face of insults and being berated  
15 over and over and over again by Martin Shkreli.

16           Martin Shkreli, it's clear, one thing the evidence  
17 did show is he is many things, they certainly proved that.  
18 That he was brilliant. Their own witnesses said it. He is a  
19 genius, a visionary, quirky would be a kind word, I think.

20           But you know, and you know full well having sat here  
21 for the last two-plus months, that he was much more than that.  
22 He was deceitful. He was a liar. He was someone that lied to  
23 Evan Greebel over and over and over again. I'm going to show  
24 you the examples. He lied to him right from the outset of  
25 their relationship. He was the king of deception. He lied to

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10386

1 investors. He lied to employees. He lied to Government  
2 regulators.

3           You know from the proof that he was secretive and he  
4 was good at lying. He fooled a lot of people, sophisticated  
5 people, successful business men, Schuyler Marshall. You saw  
6 him, he was in here. You remember him, it was a long time  
7 ago. An impressive guy, a lawyer for many, many years, went  
8 into business on his own. He was fooled. Sarah Hassan was  
9 fooled. Everyone that got a performance statement was fooled.  
10 Impressive individual after impressive individual.

11           And they say that -- and list goes on and on, we  
12 could be here for days with the people that he fooled and lied  
13 to. But their position is that Evan Greebel, he should have  
14 sussed it out. He, above all others, should have sussed it  
15 out.

16           We're going to show you how absurd that it is.  
17 Ladies and gentlemen, you learned from Mr. Rosensaft who came  
18 in this courtroom, a former federal prosecutor, Mr. Greebel's  
19 colleague at Katten. You remember, he took the stand. And I  
20 asked him, I said, Mr. Rosensaft, did Martin Shkreli always  
21 take your advice? He said, no, he didn't.

22           Not a single witness in this case, not one, came  
23 into in this courtroom and testified that Evan Greebel joined  
24 a conspiracy to manipulate or control the shares of Retrophin.  
25 That he entered into a conspiracy to commit wire fraud or

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10387

1 securities fraud or any type of fraud. Not a single witness  
2 came in this courtroom and testified that they heard Evan say  
3 or do anything wrong. Not a single witness came into this  
4 courtroom and said that they saw Evan Greebel do anything  
5 wrong, not one.

6           How many times, how many times did you sit here and  
7 hear about the misgivings of Martin Shkreli, the lies of  
8 Martin Shkreli, the phony performance updates. There is zero  
9 evidence in this record, zero that Evan Greebel knew a thing  
10 about those phony performance updated. There is zero evidence  
11 that anyone knew what was unfolding in real time.

12           So you have to ask yourselves, and I respectfully  
13 say to you, that it's fair for you to ask yourselves why did  
14 they keep on bringing up Martin Shkreli over and over and over  
15 again? And sometimes the reprehensible behavior that he  
16 engaged, why? Why, when witness after witness after witness  
17 came in here and said, I had little or no contact with  
18 Mr. Greebel. It wasn't just one. I don't even have enough  
19 room on the slide to show it. Sarah Hassan, question, "Did  
20 you ever have any direct contact with Mr. Greebel?" Answer,  
21 "I don't believe so." Richard Kocher, "Can you identify Evan  
22 Greebel in the courtroom today?" Answer, "No." The list went  
23 on and on.

24           Very little, if any, contact with Mr. Greebel. And  
25 it didn't stop there. Jackson Su said it. Sunil Jain said

1 it. Deb Oremland said it. Mr. Pierotti.

2 We'll get to Mr. Pierotti soon, Mr. Pierotti. This  
3 is who they bring before you? This is who they tell you you  
4 should trust and believe? Tim Pierotti, the guy that goes on  
5 American Greed and doesn't mention a thing about what he is  
6 engaged in regarding the Smuckers transaction at Galleon.

7 All of these people came before you and said we had  
8 no contact with Evan Greebel. We barely dealt with him. We  
9 don't know him. We can't identify him in the courtroom.

10 So the prosecutor stood up here during their closing  
11 they said, well, that's because he was the guy behind the  
12 scenes. He's the guy behinds the scenes. He was the puppet  
13 master. Ladies and gentlemen, just because they say it  
14 doesn't make it so.

15 It seems that the prosecution has an answer for  
16 everything when it comes to Mr. Greebel. No one saw him, no  
17 one dealt with him, no one had any interactions with him, no  
18 one saw him do or say anything wrong. So, well, he was the  
19 man behind the scenes.

20 Ladies and gentlemen, you heard over and over again,  
21 well, Evan Greebel said, please call me, and you know that a  
22 conversation followed. A conversation followed and you can  
23 assume this and you should assume that. That is not what we  
24 do here. We don't assume guilt. We presume innocence. I'm  
25 going to get to that important concept again soon. It's at

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10389

1 the very bedrock of our Constitution.

2 They came in here over and over again and they said,  
3 well, none of us had any contact with Mr. Greebel. And on top  
4 of it, I have no idea what Mr. Shkreli was telling  
5 Mr. Greebel. Same deal. They have no idea what Mr. Shkreli  
6 was saying to Mr. Greebel. Who knows what Mr. Shkreli said  
7 and did?

8 I respectfully ask you, ladies and gentlemen, to ask  
9 yourselves then, so why all the evidence about the misgivings  
10 and the misdeeds of Martin Shkreli? Why did they do that?  
11 Well, we feel that it's their hope that you will find him  
12 guilty by association. What do I mean by that?

13 I listened very intently and the prosecution who  
14 just stood up here and said that the defendant was the CEO of  
15 Retrophin. He was? He was the CEO of Retrophin? They mixed  
16 them up so many times I lost count. They are trying to, you  
17 know what, it's not even guilt by association, that's not what  
18 it is. That's not what it is, make no mistake about it.

19 Is there any evidence before you that Evan Greebel  
20 associated with Martin Shkreli? They showed you an e-mail  
21 where he referenced a Rangers game. Ah-hah, they are hockey  
22 buddies now. Because he went to a Rangers game with him  
23 that's the right-hand man?

24 Ladies and gentlemen, you heard from Evan Greebel's  
25 partners at Katten what Evan did is he worked long hours.

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10390

1 They told you that. Do you know his family, one I think knew  
2 his wife. Had you ever gone to dinner with him? Did you ever  
3 associate with him or his family? No. The evidence is clear  
4 that Evan Greebel kept his work at work, and his personal life  
5 at home. He's got a wife and three children, and that's what  
6 he did when he left work every day. Even if it was late at  
7 night, he didn't associate with Martin Shkreli. What he did  
8 was represent him. So that's what it is. Guilt by  
9 representation.

10 Ladies and gentlemen, the evidence demonstrates that  
11 Mr. Greebel worked hard and long hours. That he did the best  
12 job he could do with the information he had.

13 Please, when you are back there deliberating and  
14 you're looking at the evidence, it is so important, nothing  
15 can be more important, that you don't take the negative  
16 inference, you don't look at a document and say, well, it  
17 could mean this, which is a negative inference. Because Evan  
18 Greebel had the misfortune of meeting Martin Shkreli and being  
19 retained to represent a hedge fund that he ran and a company  
20 that he founded.

21 The evidence has demonstrated that Evan Greebel was  
22 not Martin Shkreli's personal lawyer. You recall the  
23 beginning of the trial there was a lot of, well, did he say my  
24 lawyer or the company's lawyer, the prosecution asked witness  
25 after witness that. Well, was it your impression that he

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10391

1 represented Martin Shkreli personally? And witnesses would  
2 say, well, personally, the company, both. There is no  
3 evidence -- did you see a retainer agreement between Martin  
4 Shkreli personally and Evan Greebel? Evan was a corporate  
5 lawyer helping funds and companies. That was his job.

6 This concept of guilt by representation is so  
7 dangerous. It is absolutely illogical, ladies and gentlemen,  
8 that someone, that the evidence shows had the dedication that  
9 Mr. Greebel did to his work would risk it all for a person,  
10 for a person he barely knew, a 20-something-year old kid who's  
11 company was a long shot, a lottery ticket at best during the  
12 events at issue in this case.

13 (Continued following page.)  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10392

1 BY MR. DUBIN:

2 And there was much to be said during the  
3 prosecution's closing argument about well, Evan was trying to  
4 ascend the ranks of his firm. Evan was his guy.

5 Ladies and gentlemen, why didn't they tell you or  
6 do you recall at the end of the day, they weren't paying  
7 their bills? They were behind hundreds and hundreds of  
8 thousands of dollars on their bill. There is e-mail after  
9 e-mail where Evan Greebel is saying you need to catch up, you  
10 need to pay us. And at the end they are stuck, Katten is,  
11 with millions of dollars in unpaid bills. That is his meal  
12 ticket? It makes no sense. It is illogical. His lack of  
13 motive is stunning here, ladies and gentlemen.

14 Now, the prosecutors sit here during their opening  
15 statement and said that one of the ways in which Mr. Greebel  
16 conspired to commit wire fraud was to, quote/unquote, arrange  
17 for the backdating of documents. Do you recall when the  
18 prosecutor stood up here, she said I'm going to go through  
19 the backdating evidence with you. Well, here is what they  
20 said in their opening. Here is what they said in their  
21 opening, quote, and this is at Page 1077 of the transcript,  
22 Lines 13 through 15, quote, To understand how this fraud  
23 worked, we have to go back in time to those two hedge funds I  
24 mentioned before that Shkreli had been running. And then  
25 they went on to tell you how MSMB Capital lost all its money



Summation - Mr. Dubin

10393

1 by 2011 and Shkreli had not told the investors that he lost  
2 his money and how he sent out those fake performance updates  
3 and then he started a fund that they called the  
4 MSMB Health Net, but there is no MSMB Health Net. Maybe they  
5 meant MSMB Healthcare. You heard no evidence about an  
6 MSMB Health Net. That is how they opened.

7 And then Mr. Shkreli continues to send fake  
8 performance statements and then that fund got shut down. And  
9 they said this at Page 1078, quote, So the defendant and  
10 Shkreli hatched a plan, that he hatched a plan, to pay the  
11 investors by stealing money from Retrophin.

12 And further down on the same page at 1078, quote,  
13 So what did the defendant do? First, he helped make it look  
14 that that first hedge fund, MSMB Capital, had invested in  
15 Retrophin when it had not. And then, Look at this. Watch  
16 this. This is what they stood before you and said, quote, So  
17 the defendant arranged for a series of backdated transaction  
18 documents, including one document you will see where the date  
19 is changed with White-Out paper, redacting tape, to make it  
20 look like an investment had taken place when it had not.

21 Ladies and gentlemen, the Judge is going to  
22 instruct you on the law after the closing arguments. We  
23 expect Her Honor to instruct you that you cannot find Evan  
24 Greebel guilty on the basis of this backdating evidence. Let  
25 me say that again: That you cannot find Evan Greebel guilty

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10394

1 on the basis of this backdating evidence. The prosecution  
2 has essentially withdrawn this as a basis for the fraud.  
3 They say background, or I don't know what it is, but you  
4 can't -- they've withdrawn this theory. You can't find him  
5 guilty on that. This should be nothing short of shocking to  
6 you. This should be shocking to you. You sat through day,  
7 after day, after day of evidence from Jackson Su and Corey  
8 Massella about some phantom scheme. Evan Greebel didn't  
9 arrange for White-Out tape. He didn't arrange for redaction  
10 tape. He didn't arrange for anything. To stand before you  
11 and say he arranged for a series of backdated documents, that  
12 is shocking, ladies and gentlemen.

13 The prosecution stood before you and accused him of  
14 something that turned out to be flat-out false and that  
15 unravelled that backdating theory that Evan Greebel arranged  
16 it. It unravelled right before you. It collapsed. They  
17 were forced to shift tactics now. This is a wall of  
18 reasonable doubt. I'm going to talk to you about it in a  
19 little while, about walls of reasonable doubt. All you need  
20 is one. I'm going to show you wall, after wall, after wall.

21 Mr. Brodsky is going to come up here tomorrow and  
22 talk to you about Count 1 and Count 2, and he's going to go  
23 through the evidence in detail. And as he goes through it  
24 show you wall, after wall, after wall of reasonable doubt.  
25 But I want to show you the exhibits about this backdating

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10395

1 theory. And why am I showing it to you? You might be asking  
2 yourselves, well, you just said that we're going to get  
3 instructed at the end of the case that this cannot be a basis  
4 to convict him. Well, ladies and gentlemen, it is so  
5 symbolic. It is so symbolic. They stand here and tell you  
6 this, and it turns out to be a completely different way. We  
7 do not have the burden of proof to do or show anything. We  
8 do not have to say anything. The burden of proof rests at  
9 this table with the prosecution. Watch this. Watch what  
10 happens.

11           You will recall that the Government -- you probably  
12 are having bad dreams about this document at this point you  
13 have seen it so much, right? This is  
14 Government's Exhibit 459. And the way I get it was, you  
15 know, how an e-mail you have to read from the bottom up to  
16 try to keep track. I did it from the top down so you can  
17 read it in sequence that way.

18           So the prosecution's theory is that Evan Greebel  
19 gets this e-mail on November 25th from Martin Shkreli. And  
20 Martin Shkreli says, Did you prepare a surrender agreement  
21 for the Retrophin shares I've given out? And Evan writes  
22 back to him, What is a surrender agreement? What do you want  
23 to do?

24           And then Martin writes back, Cancel a transfer I  
25 made.

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10396

1 And then Evan writes back, Hard to unwind stuff.  
2 Easier if they transfer it back.

3 Now, what they have tried to do was link this to  
4 the backdating, the backdating evidence. And they said,  
5 Look, this is linked to GX111-18. There is a link between  
6 the two that four days later when Mr. Greebel gets the  
7 transfer agreements, you remember he said, Please execute the  
8 transfer agreement for Retrophin, Inc., and a transfer of the  
9 common stock. The one you said was for Retrophin, LLC, and  
10 Class B common, however, LLC has not existed since  
11 mid-September.

12 Ladies and gentlemen, that was right, it has not  
13 existed. He said, You have got the wrong entity here.

14 And then Martin Shkreli says, The agreement was  
15 signed in June.

16 And then Evan said, Please call me.

17 Ladies and gentlemen, they have tried to link these  
18 two documents together. I'm going go through them again. Do  
19 not worry. I am going to go through them.

20 But then we have had to come in here and show  
21 you -- and please, these exhibits are so critical to this  
22 case. Please write these down. We had to bring in DX 124-61  
23 and show you what really happened. What really happened,  
24 right, so there is the November 25th exchange again. Here is  
25 what really happened: What really happened, look at the time

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10397

1 stamps. Before any of the e-mails on the left side of the  
2 screen happened, Martin Shkreli is having a conversation.  
3 Evan Greebel is not on it. And you remember it was this  
4 Valiant, same day November 25th, Retrophin is executing its  
5 deal with Valiant and new investors. I am asking you to,  
6 quote/unquote, give up your common stock. He then at 10:36  
7 and 29 seconds, milliseconds, milliseconds. Do you remember  
8 that, milliseconds Agent Delzotto said, that means  
9 milliseconds, 10:36:29 Martin Shkreli forwards that e-mail to  
10 Evan.

11 So look at it in sequence. Here is what it is  
12 really about. Here is the sequence. Martin Shkreli is  
13 having a conversation with other folks about giving up stock  
14 related to Valiant. He then writes to Evan Greebel seven  
15 minutes later and says, Can you prepare a surrender agreement  
16 for the Retrophin shares I have given out?

17 Evan Greebel says, What is a surrender agreement?  
18 What do you want to do?

19 Martin says, Sell it. 10:36. Cancel a specific  
20 transfer I made. And then Martin forwards him this e-mail on  
21 a completely unrelated topic at 10:36:29.

22 And Evan responds to that and says, Hard to unwind  
23 stuff. Easier if they transfer it back.

24 Ladies and gentlemen, I just said we do not have  
25 the burden of proof. Why is it if this is really a search

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10398

1 for the truth and about giving you the whole story, we  
2 brought that out? We showed that to you. This puts the lie  
3 to this theory about backdating. This is a wall of  
4 reasonable doubt. Did you hear the prosecutor said these are  
5 e-mails they thought would never see the light of day? Trust  
6 me, we want them to see the light of day. We brought them to  
7 the light of day. There it is. In the light of day. That  
8 the conversation was about something completely different.  
9 This is stunning evidence. And you recall they objected.  
10 They have the right to object to anything. They objected to  
11 this Document Number 5 coming into evidence.

12 Ladies and gentlemen, there can be no doubt that  
13 the 11/25 e-mail exchange was in response to a question he  
14 was asked the same day. Even if you had a question and said,  
15 Oh, well, maybe it could be interpreted both ways. We submit  
16 there is no doubt about what the conversation was about.  
17 Even if you could read the inference in either way, doesn't  
18 the presumption of innocence mean that you err on the side of  
19 accepting a logical explanation? Isn't that what the  
20 presumption of innocence is?

21 Now, Judge Matsumoto will instruct you on the law  
22 at the end of the case, as I said. And what Her Honor says  
23 goes. And we expect that Her Honor will instruct you that  
24 prosecutors and the FBI can conduct investigations any way  
25 they want. The Government is not on trial here, and we

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10399

1 agree. But that does not mean that you cannot consider their  
2 investigative technique. Nothing prevented them, nothing,  
3 from going to speak to Mr. Greebel to get his point of view  
4 about these e-mails.

5           You are going to hear from Mr. Brodsky, he will  
6 talk to you a little bit more about this, but he brought out  
7 with Agent Delzotto. Agent Delzotto, you recall he came on  
8 the stand and said that there were risks in speaking to  
9 Mr. Greebel; that he could destroy evidence, that, quote, He  
10 was an attorney, so the odds of him speaking to me are nil.  
11 What? The evidence is, is that Evan Greebel did speak to  
12 them. He got arrested and he spoke to them right away. Do  
13 you remember they talked about the interview room? He spoke  
14 to them right away.

15           You recall that Agent Delzotto said up there on  
16 direct examination and he just read the e-mails in, if you  
17 remember, just read them. What does this one say; what does  
18 that one say, and he just read them.

19           And do you remember when Mr. Brodsky was  
20 cross-examining him, everything changed. Well, it says this  
21 and here is what it meant. This was about the Fearnow, the  
22 Fearnow control theory. This was about this. This was about  
23 that. Well, he tried to inject his views over and over  
24 again, and then he said that another reason that they did not  
25 speak to Mr. Greebel was, quote, We typically do not -- and

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10400

1 this is at Page 7911 of the transcript -- We typically do not  
2 approach the main subject of a case because, you know, he  
3 is -- you approach the lower-level people to see if they will  
4 cooperate and give you information on the higher-level  
5 person.

6 Well, they did not do that. We had to call  
7 Mr. Rosensaft. We had to call Mr. Katten. We had to call  
8 them before you, other partners at Katten.

9 So who did they call? Who do they call as part of  
10 their case from Katten? Now, this will really seem like --  
11 now what have I done to you -- because I think she was the  
12 first witness in the case. They called Ms. Davida,  
13 Bernadette Davida. Now she was the one, if you will  
14 remember, that introduced Mr. Greebel to Mr. Shkreli, right?  
15 And that Mr. Greebel gave her credit, right, for some of his  
16 billing.

17 They called someone that had no involvement or  
18 knowledge of the events at issue, zero knowledge, zero  
19 involvement. We were the ones that had to call the Katten  
20 attorneys. We have no burden to do anything, not to  
21 cross-examine a single witness, not to call a single witness  
22 on our own case. We did that because we embraced the  
23 evidence. We embraced the evidence. We wanted you to hear  
24 from people that had actual knowledge about what went on.  
25 That is why we called Mr. Katten. That is why we called



Summation - Mr. Dubin

10401

1 Mr. Gordon. That is why we called Mr. Rosensaft, so that you  
2 could not just get inference and speculation and innuendo, so  
3 you could see the whole picture. We think you are entitled  
4 to that, don't you?

5 Ladies and gentlemen, even Agent Delzotto conceded  
6 that e-mails can have multiple meanings. He was asked at  
7 Page 7621 of the record:

8 Question: Special Agent Delzotto, do you recognize  
9 that sometimes e-mails can have more than one meaning?

10 Answer: Sometimes they cannot -- maybe he is a  
11 glass-half-empty kind of guy -- sometimes they cannot and  
12 sometimes they can.

13 Question: And you agree that sometimes words in  
14 e-mails can have more than one interpretation?

15 Sometimes they can. Sometimes that can't.

16 Question: And you, in your experience, have seen  
17 an e-mail, obtained an e-mail, interrupted it one way and  
18 then actually spoke to the participants on the e-mail and  
19 found out it meant something else, right? That has happened  
20 to you, correct?

21 Answer: Are you talking about the specific  
22 instance -- this is a simple answer of yes.

23 But it goes on. In general, Special Agent Delzotto  
24 in your experience doing cases, has there ever been an  
25 experience, yes-or-no, ever when you have obtained an e-mail

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10402

1 in the course of discovery or obtaining documents and you  
2 interpreted the plain face of the e-mail one way, but when  
3 you talk to people about it, you learned it meant something  
4 else, yes or no?

5 Answer: Yes, that is possible.

6 Well, so why assume every negative inference? Why?  
7 You know what they say about what happens when you assume.  
8 You were picked as jurors in this case not because you were  
9 the last ones standing, but for your common sense. You do  
10 not check that at the door. We considered your backgrounds.  
11 We considered everything. And we know that you can look at  
12 the e-mails and look at both interpretations and not just one  
13 just because the prosecutors stand up here and say it is so.  
14 There was no need to assume. How about asking someone, When  
15 you wrote this what did it mean? What did you mean by that?  
16 They did not even leave open the possibility that they could  
17 have gotten it wrong because finally Mr. Delzotto was asked:

18 Question: Did you leave open the possibility,  
19 Special Agent Delzotto -- this is at Page 8022 of the  
20 transcript -- you might have been wrong, that you might have  
21 been wrong about your interpretation of the e-mails that you  
22 introduced into evidence during your direct examination?

23 Answer: Might have been wrong? No, I do not  
24 believe I was wrong.

25 Ladies and gentlemen, that wasn't an empty

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10403

1 question. There is no possibility of his interpretation is  
2 wrong. Luckily, ladies and gentlemen, it is your  
3 interpretation that matters. It is your interpretation that  
4 matters. That is the presumption of innocence under two  
5 logical explanations and they both make sense to you. This  
6 one, I submit to you there is only one logical explanation.  
7 But even if you come to the conclusion on some of these that  
8 there are two, you presume Mr. Greebel innocent.

9 Here is what happened with this backdating period.  
10 Here is how it started, all right? You were shown in  
11 evidence -- this was me, my attempt to reemphasize the times  
12 there again, so I am just going to read through it.

13 Now, you were shown this evidence. Do you recall  
14 this, this is in evidence as GX111-15. And this is the  
15 e-mail exchange where Jackson Su is e-mailing Mr. Greebel,  
16 and there are some folks from Citrin Cooperman, Mr. Massella,  
17 and Ms. Chew copied on there and the attachments and it says,  
18 this is the 4,167 Marek Biestek shares. And then --

19 (Brief interruption.)

20 MR. DUBIN: That is okay. It happened to me once,  
21 too.

22 BY MR. DUBIN:

23 And this exchange is the attachment where it has  
24 the Marek Biestek transfer agreement on it. And Jackson Su  
25 writes Mr. Greebel and others, Marek Biestek transfer to

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10404

1 Martin Shkreli attached

2           So first of all as an initial matter, keep this in  
3 mind: This agreement is between two private individuals  
4 exchanging shares. Nothing is being taken away from  
5 Retrophin. Retrophin did not own them, not a single share.  
6 Retrophin did not have any right to what has been referred to  
7 as the Fearnow shares. These are private people deciding to  
8 exchange shares.

9           So what happens next, right? On the attachment of  
10 that e-mail, and it is crooked like that because that is the  
11 way it was produced, on the attachment of that e-mail,  
12 Jackson Su handwrites the date November 29, 2012, and you  
13 will remember that he said, I put that date on there because  
14 that is the date it was dropped on my desk. So he testified  
15 that he did not ask Mr. Shkreli or Mr. Biestek about the  
16 date, so he handwrites that date on there without knowing  
17 anything about when the agreement was reached.

18           So what happens next? So after that is this  
19 e-mail, right, that you just saw. And Mr. Greebel points out  
20 the mistake. He spots the error, right. He is saying that  
21 the date is 11/29/2012. You can't have a stop transfer  
22 agreement of Retrophin, LLC, because that entity does not  
23 exist anymore. It ceased to exist back in September.

24           So what does he do, Mr. Greebel? He does his job.  
25 He does what he is supposed to do. He does what any good

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10405

1 lawyer should do is spot a mistake in the document. His  
2 advice that you see in that top e-mail on GX111-16, his  
3 advice is the best evidence that he has got no clue of what  
4 is going on. If he knew that that was being backdated, he is  
5 not going to advise Mr. Su to put Retrophin, Inc., on there.  
6 Wouldn't you expect to see him saying, You have got to change  
7 the date. You have got to change the date. But not change  
8 Retrophin, LLC, when the name on the document. He had  
9 absolutely no involvement whatsoever in the date change.

10 What the prosecutors would have you believe is that  
11 that was suspicious. He should have known it was suspicious.  
12 And do you remember this, that he removed Mr. Massella from  
13 the e-mail, do you remember, because he is doing his job. He  
14 is doing his job and he wants to protect the attorney/client  
15 privilege.

16 And it would make -- well, who's on the e-mail now?  
17 Other people are dropped off, people are put on. Why would a  
18 lawyer take someone that is not his client off an e-mail?  
19 You know why. Because once you start including third  
20 parties, there is no more privilege. So he is doing the  
21 right thing. But everything is ominous. Someone gets  
22 dropped off an e-mail, listen, we will get to the WTF e-mail  
23 in a minute

24 Mr. Massella drops Jackson -- drops everybody else  
25 off the e-mail and just writes to Jackson Su, WTF. Something

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10406

1 is amiss here. Something is wrong. They did not say a word  
2 about that. But everything that they look at they want you  
3 to draw the worst inference, assume the worst about  
4 Mr. Greebel. That is not the presumption of innocence. That  
5 is the assumption of guilt

6 So Martin Shkreli writes back to Mr. Greebel and  
7 says that agreement was signed in June and Mr. Su says, what?  
8 My misstate. I will correct the date.

9 Why should Evan Greebel have any reason to  
10 disbelieve either of them? This is the CEO of his client.  
11 This is the COO of his client. And you see who is on the  
12 exchange? It is Mr. Biestek. Do you remember who he is?  
13 He is the "MB" of MSMB.

14 So what does Evan do? He says --

15 MR. DUBIN: Go to the next one.

16 BY MR. DUBIN:

17 Okay. Well, I get those documents, right, and they  
18 made a big deal about the redaction tape and starting from  
19 the top to the bottom and then he gets one back and it has  
20 redaction tape on it. It says 7/1/12. And then Evan says,  
21 Please call me. Please call me. Please call me.

22 Now, isn't that the right thing to do? Like why --  
23 you just told me that the transfers happened in June. Now I  
24 am getting a document that says July 1st. He had just been  
25 told it happened in June. He sees a different date and says,

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10407

1 Please call me. Remember, we're talking about a private  
2 company at this point in time run by some young guy led by a  
3 20-something-year-old. And what they want you to assume here  
4 is that Evan should have said fraud. Oh, no, there is a  
5 fraud.

6 How about sloppiness? How about sloppiness? And  
7 am I saying that with no evidence to support it? No, you  
8 know. You heard from witness, after witness, after witness  
9 that came in here. I am going to show you the testimony in a  
10 minute. It was a mess of a company, a disorganizational  
11 mess. No internal controls

12 And besides, again, no fraud here because private  
13 people transferring shares. And what did Mr. Su testify,  
14 okay?

15 MR. DUBIN: Can you back up a second?

16 BY MR. DUBIN:

17 Do you see where Mr. Su writes back on the bottom  
18 e-mail in evidence as I believe GX111, is it 10? I believe  
19 it is -- oh, 111-19. And he writes back, Correction. Please  
20 see attached for date of transfer.

21 Now it has got the date that Mr. Greebel was just  
22 told the transfer happened. And thankfully we have  
23 cross-examination, right? How many times did you sit here  
24 and listen to a witness on direct, and then we would come up  
25 and cross and you would think to yourself, Oh, okay. I did

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10408

1 not think about that. Remember Mr. Su got on the witness  
2 stand and said this: He said that what was going on here,  
3 what was going on here is that, you know, this was weird  
4 because it was a transfer between two people, the CEO of the  
5 company and an employee. And then he was shown by  
6 Mr. Brodsky that he had testified differently in a prior  
7 proceeding. Mr. Brodsky asked him, Now, is it fair to say  
8 that when you testified today you added something about the  
9 conversation that you had not testified to in a prior  
10 proceeding?

11 Mr. Su said, Well, I do not remember what you are  
12 referring to.

13 Question: Well today, sir, did you not say that  
14 there was a discussion between you and Mr. Greebel about, LLC  
15 versus, Inc.?

16 Answer: Right.

17 Question: And then you also said that you, you  
18 told -- I am sorry, I am getting Mr. Su and  
19 Mr. Massella mixed up. What Mr. Su tried to say was that he  
20 said, look, Evan, you and Martin work it out. He had never  
21 said that before. He testified in a prior proceeding all  
22 about this, never said that, right? And he finally had to  
23 concede.

24 Here is how he testified at a prior proceeding. Do  
25 you recall the conversation we talked about, the share



Summation - Mr. Dubin

10409

1 transfer and I recall him explaining to me the difference in  
2 LLC and was replaced by the Inc., for records and that is  
3 what I remember from the conversation.

4 Do you recall anything else from that phone call?

5 I do not.

6 So why did he come in here and try to add  
7 something? Why? What, did his memory get better as time  
8 went on? Or could it be this:

9 You are going to hear that part of your awesome  
10 responsibility is that you are the judges of the witnesses'  
11 credibility and you can weigh that into consideration. You  
12 saw Jackson Su on the witness stand, and something really  
13 remarkable happened. Do you remember Jackson Su took the  
14 witness stand and he was confronted by Mr. Brodsky about  
15 hacking into the computer systems of Retrophin; do you recall  
16 that?

17 (Continued on next page)

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10410

1 MR. DUBIN: And then he shows up here the next day,  
2 the next day and he's got -- he's got an agreement from the  
3 prosecutors that they won't prosecute him for that, right in  
4 the middle of his testimony. If I had more hair on my head  
5 I'd pull it out. They said -- they say that you can trust  
6 this man. Do you think he's got an axe to grind with  
7 Martin Shkreli? So he comes in here and he's trying to what,  
8 stick it to Mr. Greebel and add stuff? And he's not the only  
9 one. Ladies and gentlemen, you can consider their bias. That  
10 when they came in here and tried to add things to try to make  
11 Mr. Greebel look bad that their testimony is worthless on that  
12 topic.

13 Thankfully, we had his testimony from a prior  
14 proceeding and we were able to lock him in in that instance.  
15 And look at this, look at this, Jackson Su came in here and  
16 said he, himself, had no reason to believe that the transfer  
17 hadn't happened back in June. So think about what the  
18 prosecution is saying to you. The COO of the company had no  
19 reason -- and, look, he had bias, he had every reason to try  
20 to make that up, right, and say, well, I suspected it didn't  
21 happen in June, he came before you and said I had no reason to  
22 believe that the date that I wrote 11/29 and then redacting  
23 tape, you know, to July, even after all of that he had no  
24 reason to believe that it didn't actually happen back in June.  
25 But what they're asking you to do is to assume and infer that

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10411

1 Mr. Greebel must have known, he had to have known. Why?

2 Because they say it's so?

3 The clear testimony in this case is that these are  
4 private transfers. They took nothing away from Retrophin and  
5 there's nothing wrong with that. And Jackson Su told you  
6 that. This is from Mr. Shkreli personal holdings?

7 Answer: Yes.

8 Question: It's not taking anything away from  
9 Retrophin?

10 Answer, correct. Mr. Shkreli is the transferor.

11 Even if you were to assume, it's so dangerous, but  
12 even if you took them at their word and say it harmed  
13 Retrophin, what evidence is there that Evan Greebel should  
14 have started asking questions or -- that's just speculation.

15 He did what he was supposed to do, his job, and said  
16 the entities are wrong, then he's told that it happens on an  
17 earlier date.

18 Now a lot was made of this next email, GX113-3 in  
19 evidence. Do you remember this? And I asked him, what does  
20 WTF mean? Well, Mr. Massella writes to Jackson Su, WTF. So  
21 what was this all about? What was this all about? This  
22 company at the time was a mess, there's no dispute about that.  
23 Now, he was the one that came in here, Mr. Massella, and tried  
24 to tell you, well, here's what it was about. I thought there  
25 was something weird here because this is the CEO and an

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10412

1 employee and a transfer of stock. The government would have  
2 you believe, the prosecutors are saying to you that  
3 Mr. Massella thought something was wrong. What he ended up  
4 testifying to is that he wrote WTF because the dates kept  
5 changing and it was going to cause him more paperwork. That's  
6 it. Su kept sending the stock transfer agreements and each  
7 change meant that Mr. Massella had to redo it. Remember, he  
8 talked about how frustrated that made him. So he tried to add  
9 this extra thing. Now, he, too, ultimately had to concede the  
10 truth. So why did he try to add it? Don't you recall what  
11 happened when he was on the stand, Mr. Massella? Do you  
12 remember what happened? He was fired or forced out or a  
13 combination of both by Mr. Greebel's father-in-law's company,  
14 Citrin Cooperman and the allegations were that he had engaged  
15 in improprieties. Remember, it was regarding a loan that he  
16 gave to the client and the client still owed Citrin Cooperman  
17 money and that he tried to get his money back before he got  
18 his employer paid, do you remember that? And we brought that  
19 out.

20 Do you remember Mr. Massella on the witness stand  
21 when that came out? Do you think he has warm and fuzzy  
22 feelings about Martin Shkreli? Is that why he tried to add  
23 something? I don't know why he tried to add something. I  
24 don't know. But ultimately he had to concede what really  
25 happened too.

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10413

1           Question: Mr. Massella, you remember you just  
2 testified a few minutes ago about what that meant, WTF.

3           Answer: Yes, sir.

4           Isn't that the case, sir, that your testimony as to  
5 the reason you wrote WTF contradicts what you said in a prior  
6 proceeding? And he said to you, no, no.

7           Now if there were no ability to keep on probing and  
8 cross examining you might be left there saying, well, why  
9 shouldn't I believe him. Well, why you shouldn't believe him  
10 is because when he was confronted with his prior testimony he  
11 ultimately had to concede it. Is it not the case that the WTF  
12 had directly to do with the fact that you were frustrated the  
13 cap table kept changing. That's why cross-examination is so  
14 critical.

15           You know, it's been said that cross-examination,  
16 cross-examination is the greatest legal invention ever for  
17 discovering the truth. We agree. It's critical. Witness  
18 after witness after witness would say one thing and then you  
19 show them here's how you testified before or here's the  
20 document. What's the best evidence of what he really meant  
21 and what really frustrated him? The best evidence is that  
22 witness after witness came in here and said this company was a  
23 mess. We'll get to Steven Richardson later, but he came in  
24 here and said the internal controls of Retrophin were in a  
25 state of disorganization. Certainly, definitely.

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10414

1 Mr. Massella even said it.

2 Question: And the capitalization tables were a mess  
3 in 2012, weren't they, Mr. Massella?

4 Answer: Yes.

5 Mr. Aselage, question, in plain English, the company  
6 was a disorganizational mess, correct?

7 Answer: I would agree with that. He didn't agree  
8 to much, but he agreed with that.

9 You remember Sunil Jain.

10 Question: This was a disorganized company, right,  
11 Mr. Jain? And what does the evidence show you, what is  
12 happening in realtime, what is unfolding in realtime? Exactly  
13 what Massella had to ultimately admit to because he writes  
14 back in a fit of frustration, Jackson, every time we receive  
15 these, it changes everything we created already. Are these  
16 the final transfers?

17 Excuse me, one moment. We ask you to look at the  
18 contemporaneous evidence, look at what's happening. The  
19 contemporaneous evidence shows you. They showed you an  
20 exhibit during their closing, 451 from Marek Biestek -- I  
21 think it's 461 from Marek Biestek on November 30th that asks  
22 if Evan Greebel could call him and then they told you about a  
23 conversation, do you remember, that Evan Greebel must have had  
24 with Marek Biestek. Ladies and gentlemen, why didn't they  
25 call Marek Biestek? You can't just assume your way to what

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10415

1 conversations must have -- what must have been said on these  
2 conversations.

3 And you saw evidence about the cap table, you saw it  
4 over and over and over again and the prosecutor stood up here  
5 earlier and said, well, it's an easy cap table to read, not a  
6 lot on there. Ladies and gentlemen, the evidence is that that  
7 cap table changed all the time. Do you remember you kept on  
8 seeing version after version and it would say final version,  
9 and then there would be yet another one and another one. And  
10 you don't have -- look, I keep on showing you the testimony  
11 and the evidence because I'm essentially ceding the floor to  
12 the evidence. Jackson Su testified that cap table changes  
13 after December 12th, 2012. Well, remember this, this keeps  
14 changing over and over again. They are making changes or  
15 Jackson Su and Corey Massella after the company goes public.

16 We'll get to that in a minute, but you remember  
17 Mr. Jacobs, who was a mentor of sorts for Mr. Greebel, look,  
18 they relied on Mr. Jacobs' testimony during their closing  
19 argument. We ask to you rely on it too. He testified in no  
20 uncertain terms:

21 Question: And how, if at all, I think you mentioned  
22 the capitalization table, does it change or not change during  
23 that time period.

24 Answer: I found that in these private companies  
25 that go public they change almost every week. And he goes on

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10416

1 to say, there's always someone that comes forward that says  
2 they're entitled to something, someone was promised stock.  
3 It's a very fluid document.

4 Did you see any evidence to the contrary? Was that  
5 challenged ever? They would have you believe that when the  
6 cap table changes that means only the numbers change, that's  
7 not so. That's not what people testified to. Different  
8 people appear on it, different entities appear on it and you  
9 know that that's the case because you saw that evidence.  
10 Mr. Aselage himself suddenly appears on the cap table in the  
11 fall of 2012. Do you recall that Mr. Shkreli gifted him  
12 50,000 shares? Do you remember that? And then Mr. Aselage  
13 appears on the cap table. Boom, there is. Is that fraud?  
14 50,000 shares, a new name, that's not fraud.

15 There's another reason none of this should have  
16 raised alarm bells. Management is responsible for the cap  
17 table. You heard from Ms. Davida and Mr. Rosensaft. You're  
18 entitled to rely on the information that your client provides  
19 you. Let's not go changing what the rules are and the  
20 standard for Mr. Greebel. What is he supposed to say, you  
21 tell me that you have this much money in the bank, I want  
22 backup, give me all your bank statements. You're going to see  
23 in a moment Jackson Su didn't even have access to the bank  
24 statements.

25 When you go to a doctor and they say -- or do you



Summation - Mr. Dubin

10417

1 smoke, are you a smoker? And you say no. Does the doctor say  
2 let me smell your hands. Let me see if I can smell smoke on  
3 your hands. Let me see your teeth, are they yellow. He's  
4 entitled to accept their representations.

5 Ladies and gentlemen, Mr. Jacobs said the same  
6 thing. Mr. Rosensaft said it too. He accepted Mr. Shkreli's  
7 representations, he's my client. As a general matter I take  
8 his representation. I take his representation as true, a  
9 former federal prosecutor. Mr. Jacobs says the same thing.

10 Question: And when you were working with  
11 Mr. Greebel -- and this is right on the money on the  
12 capitalization table -- why, if at all, why did you rely on  
13 management for the information? And Mr. Jacobs said  
14 management is usually the people who keep track of what was  
15 going on. They usually know who they entered into an  
16 agreement with.

17 Ladies and gentlemen, when Retrophin LLC converted  
18 into Retrophin Inc., you remember it's still a private company  
19 in September, September of 2012, Evan questioned Mr. Shkreli  
20 directly about the cap table. They wanted you to believe or  
21 infer that, you know, here's evidence of his state of mind.  
22 Here's evidence of his state of mind. This is in evidence at  
23 DX-1055. Mr. Greebel writes in September of 2012, as  
24 discussed attached are two cap tables, right, and he explains  
25 what they are. Then Shkreli responds, this looks good to me.

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10418

1 And Mr. Greebel asks him, are the numbers accurate and  
2 accurately reflect your movements and internal records? He's  
3 asking his client, he's doing his job, and he says  
4 substantially so, yes. That is proof, direct proof, when we  
5 have no burden, that he relied on Mr. Shkreli's  
6 representations. There's no reason to disbelieve them at this  
7 point in time.

8 Look, anybody can stand here and with the benefit of  
9 hindsight and knowing everything that is known now about  
10 Mr. Shkreli and say, well, he should have known, he should  
11 have known. So all of them should have known. Everyone  
12 should have known.

13 Ladies and gentlemen, Mr. Massella came in here and  
14 told you he made changes to the cap table on his own, no  
15 permission from anyone, relying on Mr. Su, no documents to  
16 back it up. He's shown DX110-22 and 111-23 he's asked: Does  
17 it refresh your recollection that after the reverse merger,  
18 after the company goes public, right? After the reverse  
19 merger you and Jackson Su decided to change numbers on the cap  
20 table.

21 Answer: No, that's when Su instructing me to change  
22 the numbers. I would not electively change the numbers.

23 Question: So is Evan Greebel on either one of those  
24 communications?

25 Answer: Absolutely not.

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10419

1 And we know, because Mr. Massella testified to it,  
2 that edits were made to the cap table on December 16th without  
3 Mr. Greebel's involvement. And both Jackson Su and Corey  
4 Massella testified that they were allowed to do that based on  
5 Mr. Shkreli's representations.

6 Now think about this, ladies and gentlemen, please,  
7 think about this, if Jackson Su and Corey Massella were  
8 allowed to make not even 11th hour these are 13th hour  
9 changes, this is after the company goes public, all of a  
10 sudden now Evan Greebel is not allowed to accept the company's  
11 representation? He should be saying, no, I don't believe you.  
12 Is that what they're saying that he should just start  
13 questioning everything they tell him. I don't believe your  
14 representation. When auditors are accepting it, accountants  
15 are accepting Mr. Shkreli's representations, the COO of the  
16 company are accepting his representations. So they say, well,  
17 still alarm bells should have been raised, alarm bells should  
18 have been raised. Really?

19 Well, Mr. Aselage took the witness stand and told  
20 you about the 50,000 shares that he received as a gift from  
21 Mr. Shkreli, do you recall that? And then we asked Mr. Su,  
22 Mr. Brodsky asked him, nothing wrong with Mr. Aselage getting  
23 50,000 Class B common units. I wouldn't think so.

24 Question: You could have given your shares that you  
25 received from Mr. Shkreli to anybody you wanted, right?

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10420

1 Answer: If it wasn't prohibited within the  
2 agreement -- and we know it wasn't, ladies and gentlemen.

3 Question: You can give it to anyone you want,  
4 anybody you want?

5 Answer: If it allowed for it, yeah.

6 Do you see any evidence that it wasn't allowed for?  
7 There is none.

8 The agreement. This is stunning, this is -- look at  
9 what happens here. They want to talk about backdating, watch  
10 what happens. Look at the date of this email. This is from  
11 Martin Shkreli to Jackson Su on November 2nd, 2012 and it  
12 attaches Form Donee Rep Letter S.A. It says, for value  
13 received, Martin Shkreli does hereby grant, sell, assign,  
14 transfer and convey unto Stephen Aselage the transferee, its  
15 successors and assigns all of his right, title, and interest  
16 to 50,000 Class B units, right? And do you see at the bottom,  
17 there are no signatures, there are no dates, there is nothing.  
18 Then watch what happens. Here's the date here, November 2nd.  
19 So now Jackson Su sends the executed agreement, right, with  
20 Mr. Shkreli's signature and Mr. Aselage's signature onto  
21 Citrin Cooperman, Mr. Massella and his colleague, and there's  
22 no signature. You see he writes Jackson Su, Stephen Aselage  
23 share transfer, that's one of the attachments. There's also  
24 his employment agreement attached.

25 So then Citrin Cooperman sends him an email a couple

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10421

1 of days later and says, well, how do I validate the date in  
2 which the transfer happened for Steve? And Jackson Su writes  
3 back, should clear up. I think he probably meant should clear  
4 it up. And look at what happens. There's a date. A date  
5 appears. There's a date. Jackson Su backdates the gift.  
6 Those emails are going back and forth in November and he  
7 writes in September. And the prosecution says there's nothing  
8 wrong with this, nothing wrong with this. Well, we agree. We  
9 agree.

10           You think Mr. Aselage when he was asked, are you  
11 going to give it back? Remember, when he was on the stand  
12 Mr. Brodsky asked him, well, Mr. Shkreli gifted you 50,000  
13 Class B common units and Mr. Brodsky said to him, well, isn't  
14 it the case that the 50,000 class common units at conversion  
15 when Retrophin went public today would be worth over  
16 \$5 million?

17           Answer: Yes.

18           Question: Sir, since -- and Mr. Aselage he wanted  
19 to get it right, wanted to get it right, he said actually six,  
20 worth 6 million now.

21           Mr. Brodsky asked him, having received those shares  
22 from Mr. Shkreli as a gift in 2012, and having Mr. Shkreli  
23 decline to get those shares back, are you now, as the CEO of  
24 Retrophin, going to return the shares that Mr. Shkreli gave  
25 you?

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10422

1 Answer: To the shareholders? Am I going to give  
2 them back?

3 Mr. Brodsky said, to the company. And Mr. Aselage  
4 said, nope. He's not giving them back.

5 Your Honor, if --

6 THE COURT: Well, is the jury willing to stay until  
7 5:30 so we can get some more of his closing?

8 THE JURY: Yes.

9 THE COURT: Keep going.

10 MR. DUBIN: Keep going.

11 Now, remember -- so we're stopping at 5:30 not six,  
12 Your Honor?

13 THE COURT: Well, unless the jury can stay until six  
14 BUT that might be pushing. I'd like to get as far long as we  
15 can.

16 MR. DUBIN: Sure.

17 THE COURT: Does any juror have a problem staying  
18 until six, just raise your hand.

19 THE JUROR: The train situation is bad. 5:30 is all  
20 right.

21 THE COURT: Is 5:30 all right, sir?

22 THE JUROR: Yes.

23 THE COURT: All right, 5:30 it is. Please keep  
24 going.

25 MR. DUBIN: Thank you, Your Honor.

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10423

1           Now, remember, Retrophin made a series of public  
2 announcements throughout 2012 that MSMB Capital had led a  
3 Series A financing for Retrophin. Let's talk about logical  
4 inferences. Isn't it a logical inference that Evan or anyone  
5 reading those announcements would reasonably believe that MSMB  
6 Capital had invested earlier in the year.

7           Here's a press release, and there were a bunch of  
8 them, I'm not going to bore you with all of them, in May of  
9 2012 and it's in evidence as DX-13057. Retrophin LLC, a  
10 privately held New-York-based biotechnology company focused on  
11 discovering developing treatments for rare and  
12 life-threatening diseases today announced completion of its  
13 Series A financing. The 4 million-dollar round was led by  
14 who? By MSMB Capital. And they want you to think that it was  
15 unreasonable for Mr. Greebel to believe that MSMB Capital had  
16 invested in Retrophin? And, oh, when MSMB lands on the cap  
17 table at the end of the year Mr. Greebel should have been very  
18 alarmed. Why is it not reasonable to infer that he believed  
19 it was due to nothing more than the same sloppiness everybody  
20 else testified to about this cap table that constantly changed  
21 all the time. Why is it not reasonable? Isn't that what the  
22 presumption of innocence demands. There is no reason for  
23 Mr. Greebel to believe that the investment hadn't been made.

24           I'm going to show you something right now that I  
25 please ask you to remember. They have no response for this,

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10424

1 no credible response. Did you hear any evidence that  
2 QuickBooks -- some of you may be familiar with QuickBooks, the  
3 accounting software, did you hear any evidence that QuickBooks  
4 could be -- could be or was manipulated? You didn't hear any  
5 evidence of that.

6 THE COURT: Would you keep your voice up, please,  
7 sir.

8 MR. DUBIN: Sorry.

9 THE COURT: I can't hear you.

10 MR. DUBIN: You didn't hear any evidence of that did  
11 you? DX110-9 on the screen now. There can be no dispute that  
12 Retrophin's QuickBooks accounting system recorded an MSMB  
13 Capital investment in Retrophin in both April of 2012 and July  
14 of 2012. The prosecution has no answer to this document on  
15 the screen. They have no answer to it, no credible response.

16 This is from Mr. Massella's colleague at Citrin  
17 Cooperman. You see at the bottom the QuickBook entries, down  
18 here, MSMB Capital 25,000 shares on April 24th, 2012.  
19 July 27th, 2012 for 50,000 shares. But their position is that  
20 Evan should suss it out. He didn't have any access to MSMB  
21 bank records or brokerage records. Mr. Su didn't even have  
22 access, he's the COO of the company. But the COO doesn't have  
23 access, he works there internally but somehow Evan had the  
24 password? Where is the evidence of that? There is no  
25 evidence.



Summation - Mr. Dubin

10425

1 Mr. Su was asked:

2 Question: Did you ever have access to the bank  
3 account statements for MSMB Capital Management?

4 Answer: No.

5 So here's the COO of MSMB and Retrophin, he doesn't  
6 even have access. But Evan somehow should have telepathically  
7 figured it out. Is that the argument? He had no idea, ladies  
8 and gentlemen.

9 You heard evidence about these arrangements with  
10 Mulleady and Fernandez, do you recall that, for them to return  
11 stock that Mr. Shkreli had gifted to them and they arranged  
12 for them to purchase shares from Troy Fearnow. And I think  
13 you were shown these during the government's closing  
14 arguments, but if you weren't I'll show them to you. GX-447  
15 from Martin Shkreli to Kevin Mulleady were these transfers.  
16 Who is not on that email? Mr. Greebel.

17 Regarding Mr. Fernandez, in evidence as GX-462,  
18 Mr. Greebel is not on that email. You cannot infer your way  
19 to his knowledge. You cannot assume your way to his state of  
20 mind. He's not on either email. He's not even charged with  
21 this anymore. But it is so critical to the lack of evidence  
22 here.

23 If this is somehow background to anything about  
24 these conspiracy charges, whatever background it is  
25 Mr. Greebel knows nothing about it.

1           This is so important about what Mr. Greebel's state  
2 of mind was. Take a close look at his reaction upon receiving  
3 the December 30th, 2012 stock -- the cap table, I'm sorry, on  
4 12/3/12. Look at his reaction. In evidence as DX-111-27 and  
5 28. Mr. Shkreli writes to him: Here's what the final cap  
6 table will look like with all the conversions put into effect.  
7 And then he sends him an email with the final cap table and  
8 Mr. Greebel says, uh-oh, please call me to discuss. Very  
9 ominous, somehow please call me to discuss is now, oh, they  
10 must have been talking about crime. Nonsense. Please call me  
11 to discuss. Then he says, guys, can the three of us talk,  
12 these numbers are not matching up. He's asking why is MSMB  
13 suddenly appearing on the cap table. That's what's going on  
14 here.

15           (Continued on the next page.)  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10427

1 MR. DUBIN: (Cont'g.) Look at the evidence. Here's  
2 the evidence. Look at the timeline. 10:54 p.m. Guys, can  
3 the three of us talk. It's not making sense to him. He sees  
4 MSMB appears on the cap table. So what happens next? He  
5 doesn't know about these transfer agreements. And then, at  
6 11:23 p.m., Jackson Su sends them to him. Now it makes sense.  
7 Critical. Critical. Critical to Mr. Greebel's state of mind.

8 And there was some argument or some suggestion that  
9 the 12/3, that these transfers should have been accounted for  
10 properly, and that Mr. Greebel somehow has some involvement in  
11 that.

12 Here's proof that he has no involvement and told  
13 everybody that they're not -- Katten and Mr. Greebel are not  
14 responsible for accounting treatment. He tells them on  
15 December 7th at the bottom: Accounting treatment is not our  
16 responsibility. We're not qualified to give advice on that.

17 And you heard during the prosecution's closing  
18 argument about this 13D, and what the prosecutor said to you:  
19 That's proof. That Evan Greebel did what? That he made a  
20 misrepresentation to the SEC. Are they kidding?

21 Ladies and gentlemen, they suggested to you that  
22 what Mr. Massella meant when he testified is that Mr. Greebel  
23 told him that the Martin Shkreli transfer is transferring  
24 shares to MSMB Capital that was a gift. Ladies and gentlemen,  
25 that is not what Corey Massella testified to. Look at the

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10428

1 testimony.

2 Q Who, if anyone, did you discuss this transfer  
3 with?

4 "ANSWER: At some point I did discuss it with Evan.

5 "QUESTION: Okay. And what did Mr. Greebel tell you  
6 about this transfer?

7 "ANSWER: That it was outside the company, and that  
8 it was -- it was a gift.

9 "QUESTION: And what does that mean for it to be a  
10 gift?

11 A It would -- well, it was -- it was -- if it was a  
12 gift between two individuals, two individuals outside  
13 the company."

14 Not Martin Shkreli and MSMB, the individuals that  
15 are transferring the shares. Who had every right to do it.  
16 That was -- these were questions about the 11/29 transfer.

17 And then next, and I think that the prosecutor  
18 showed you this during their closing. Look at the answer.

19 For all the share transfers, the explanation we  
20 received is that these were -- these were gifts outside the  
21 company between the individuals.

22 So Mr. Massella testified about the transfers  
23 between the individuals being the gift, the individuals, not  
24 the transfer from Shkreli to MSMB Capital.

25 Please, it's so critical that you look at the

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10429

1 evidence. Look at what the testimony is. This is not some  
2 game of gotcha where we're trying to make something fit a  
3 theory. We're talking about a human being over there facing  
4 these accusations. What are we doing here?

5 Then they said -- look at this one, they showed you  
6 an email and they said: Evan is saying to Mr. Shkreli give me  
7 a call. And they say: Oh, more inference and guess work.  
8 They tell you what the call was and what was discussed.

9 Here's a critical point. They cannot infer and  
10 assume their way to what happened on phone calls. If Evan  
11 didn't even fill out the 13D, he wasn't the one that wrote the  
12 words on that form "WC," which they say mean working capital.  
13 We'll get to that in a minute. If he's not the one that wrote  
14 those words, doesn't that mean something to you? Shouldn't it  
15 mean something to you?

16 You're going to see evidence tomorrow.  
17 Mr. Brodsky's going to show you the invoice. He didn't even  
18 write -- he didn't even fill out the form. But they just  
19 stood here before you and said it was Mr. Greebel put WC on  
20 there and it was misleading. A Katten lawyer named Michelle  
21 Griswold wrote it. We don't even know what it means, but  
22 let's take them at their word, okay? Whether it means working  
23 capital or anything else.

24 Evan Greebel didn't certify to the truth of what's  
25 in that form. Ask for the form, it's in evidence. You can

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10430

1 look at it yourself. Martin Shkreli is the one that certifies  
2 as the truth and accuracy of that form. But now somehow  
3 Mr. Greebel should be responsible for the representations that  
4 his client made? That's what I meant by "guilt by  
5 representation." It's not right. You shouldn't accept it.

6 Even if you assume that it means working capital,  
7 that certainly includes sweat equity; does it not? Because  
8 they give you a different definition it doesn't include sweat  
9 equity. You decide.

10 Work is done on behalf of Retrophin by MSMB Capital.  
11 That's not working capital? Sweat equity. You saw the press  
12 release. MSMB led \$4 million in financial. That doesn't  
13 matter? It doesn't make a difference?

14 The prosecutor then said: Here's another theory on  
15 it. Well, the same day that 13D was filed, Mr. Shkreli sends  
16 an email to Darren Blanton and explains that the 13D  
17 represented MSMB's investment in Retrophin.

18 Ask for the email, ladies and gentlemen. Evan  
19 Greebel is not on that email. They can't assume his way on to  
20 the cc of that email. He's not on it. He doesn't know that  
21 Martin Shkreli said that.

22 Why did Martin Shkreli transfer shares to  
23 MSMB Capital? We can be here to determine that this case was  
24 about trying to figure out what was in Martin Shkreli's mind  
25 at any given time about any given thing.

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10431

1           The prosecution's theory is that Martin Shkreli lied  
2 to the SEC staff about the MSMB Capital assets under  
3 management and had to gift MSMB Capital some Retrophin shares  
4 to make up a value and back it up with this lie.

5           Evan Greebel doesn't know anything about what  
6 Shkreli told the SEC staff. There's no evidence of that. He  
7 doesn't know back at the time while it's happening that  
8 Shkreli is representing himself. I submit to you that he's  
9 representing himself because for whatever reason he's trying  
10 to keep it to himself.

11           He concealed that inquiry by the SEC for Mr. Greebel  
12 in 2012, and there's no evidence to the contrary. He only  
13 brings in Katten when the inquiry turns into a formal  
14 investigation when subpoenas start getting issued in 2013.

15           That's when he's responding as Martin Shkreli on his  
16 own to the SEC. You remember you saw the emails between Eric  
17 Schmidt of the SEC and Martin Shkreli? With no one else on  
18 them. That's in 2012.

19           So the prosecution wants you to speculate that he  
20 knew, that Evan knew about Martin Shkreli's lies to the SEC  
21 staff in November and they did this by pointing to  
22 Mr. Rosensaft's testimony.

23           There are a ton of problems with this theory, so  
24 many I don't even know where to begin. Let me give you a few.

25           First of all, and I'll show you his testimony in a

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10432

1 minute. Mr. Rosensaft seemed to be mistaken about when he  
2 learned. Because I asked him: Might you be mistaken? You  
3 remember he said: I think it was in the beginning of the  
4 year. And then I showed him his time entries and I said:  
5 Might you be mistaken? And he said, "Yes."

6 He testified that he billed for all of his time.  
7 Even if you assume that Mr. Greebel learned at some point  
8 early 2013 that Mr. Shkreli had been representing himself  
9 there's no evidence that Mr. Shkreli told Evan what he was  
10 telling the SEC staff. At a minimum, you know, ladies and  
11 gentlemen, you know that he certainly wasn't telling Evan that  
12 he lied to the SEC staff about his assets under management at  
13 MSMB Capital. You want to know why? I'm going to show you in  
14 a minute that he lied to Evan. He lied to Evan. Evan asked  
15 him: What are your assets under management? He told Evan he  
16 had 40 million.

17 So all of a sudden through the process of, what,  
18 osmosis or telepathy he's supposed to somehow figure it all  
19 out and crack the case and look into his mind and see what's  
20 going on? Mr. Shkreli was the master of deception. He was a  
21 pro at this.

22 Even if you assume that he had a copy of what  
23 Shkreli told the SEC staff, all he would see is yet another  
24 representation from Mr. Shkreli that MSMB Capital had invested  
25 in Retrophin. How would that mean anything to Evan?



Summation - Mr. Dubin

10433

1           At that time, Evan Greebel has no idea that  
2 MSMB Capital had blown up. That it had no assets at the time.  
3 And if there's any suggestion, any suggestion in their  
4 rebuttal that Mr. Greebel deleted entries or, you know, went  
5 into the Katten billing system, your common sense tells you  
6 that those systems catch all entries. That's just pure  
7 speculation.

8           Here was the evidence on the SEC investigation.  
9 Right? October 2012, here's Mr. Schmidt of the SEC, in  
10 evidence as GX448A. Asking Mr. Shkreli for documents: As we  
11 discussed, Evan, attaching a copy of the request for voluntary  
12 production of documents that I sent to you today via overnight  
13 delivery. No one else on the email but the SEC and Martin  
14 Shkreli. We'll put that on the timeline. That's on  
15 October 1st, 2012.

16           Martin Shkreli responds, November 4, 2012 and says:  
17 Please find attached documents responsive to that inquiry.  
18 The password for the protected file, and he provides the  
19 password.

20           That's on -- no one's on the email but Mr. Shkreli  
21 and the SEC. That's in November 2012, November 4, 2012.

22           Now you saw evidence of billing entries. This is  
23 GX841. Look at the date. You see it's a April 13th, Evan  
24 Greebel conversation with M. Rosensaft. What is that relating  
25 to?

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10434

1 Here's the guy that -- here's the guy that they  
2 say -- they say that this man is not telling anyone what's  
3 going on and he's keeping things from people. It's about the  
4 Pierotti litigation. Nothing to with the SEC inquiry. That  
5 is his first time entry, Mr. Rosensaft, for Retrophin, in  
6 April.

7 What happens next? His first time entry appears on  
8 May 13th. On May 13th. Keep this date that mind. May 13th,  
9 2013. This is important.

10 Call with E. Greebel to discuss SEC subpoena.  
11 Review subpoena. Call with SEC to discuss investigation and  
12 timetable.

13 So what happens next? What happens next?  
14 Mr. Greebel is sent the subpoena and then what does he do on  
15 the same day? He forwards it, on May 13th, 2013, to his  
16 partner at Katten, a former federal prosecutor. That's what  
17 happened. That's what the evidence shows.

18 So when I asked Mr. Rosensaft at 8607 of the record,  
19 you remember because the prosecutors were trying to suggest  
20 that he knew about this SEC investigation in the beginning of  
21 the year, and therefore Mr. Greebel should have known. He  
22 said it himself, when I showed him that time entry that you  
23 just saw, I said:

24 "QUESTION: Is it fair to say that you might be  
25 mistaken as to what had actually happened?"

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10435

1 And he said: Sure, it's possible.

2 Ladies and gentlemen, this back dating theory or  
3 whatever it was collapsed right before you. It collapsed  
4 right in front of you.

5 There was multiple examples of back dating over and  
6 over again. Look at this. Here's some from Marcum. Here's  
7 someone from Marcum, the external auditor asking for support  
8 for something related to MSMB Healthcare's investment in  
9 Retrophin. This is in January, apparently in January of 2012.  
10 Right?

11 And they say: Hi, Jackson. This is the auditor.  
12 Hi, Jackson. This is the agreement which I many missing. I  
13 cannot delete the \$2040 because it is part of the equity  
14 schedule. And there, he's talking about this entry,  
15 1/19/2012.

16 Jackson Su writes back: My mistake, the agreement  
17 was 2,000 shares at \$40. I will send you the document when I  
18 return to the office possibly as late a Monday.

19 What happens next? What happens next? Jackson Su,  
20 on December 16th, sends Martin Shkreli, Evan Greebel nowhere  
21 on this email. Sends -- Su sends to Shkreli and copies  
22 Michael Smith and says: Sign and the return first thing in  
23 the morning. Date of subscription 1/19. This is in December.  
24 This is at the end of year. Date of subscription. The  
25 beginning of the year, 1/19. Price, \$40. Shares, 2,000.

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10436

1 Watch what happens. Jackson Su forwards it along to  
2 the auditors and says: Here it is. Look, here's the  
3 subscription agreement. And he writes in the date earlier in  
4 the year. And look at the email. He tells Martin Shkreli the  
5 information on the left, 2000 shares at \$40. MSMB Healthcare  
6 total of 80,000. And it all ends up in the subscription  
7 agreement. They backdate this document to the beginning of  
8 the year. Su admitted he backdated documents.

9 Ladies and gentlemen, my last five minutes, so we  
10 can catch the train on time and let you get some rest, let me  
11 say this: This backdating evidence should tell you everything  
12 you need to know. This should frame the context of what --  
13 this should frame the context for everything that Mr. Brodsky  
14 will stand up here tomorrow and go through with you on Counts  
15 One and Two.

16 Time and time again, you just saw the evidence, the  
17 prosecutor stood up here and tried to make a case when there's  
18 no case to be made. Now, it's quite a thing, ladies and  
19 gentlemen, quite a thing, to put your faith in the hands of  
20 12 -- 14 people you never met. I cannot begin to imagine what  
21 that might be like.

22 Sitting here over the last two -- last month, one  
23 thing that has given me comfort, given Mr. Brodsky,  
24 Mr. Mastro, Ms. Denerstein, Mr. Chan and our whole team  
25 comfort was watching the 14 of you.

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10437

1           The thing that gives us comfort that it's you  
2 sitting in judgment of Mr. Greebel because as this trial has  
3 unfolding, I've sat there often marveled at your willingness  
4 to sit through but readily admit it's not the most  
5 scintillating of story lines, not the most interesting subject  
6 matter, an unsavory cast of characters from time to time. Who  
7 can forget the sidebars. Who can forget the sidebars.

8           Look through it all. We've watched you take notes.  
9 We've watched how you listen so carefully and just been so  
10 attentive, and from the bottom of our hearts, we thank you.  
11 We cannot thank you enough to be willing to take part in  
12 perhaps one of the most important things, I'll say it with the  
13 risk of sounding corny that you give it the highest of civic  
14 responsibilities, one of the most important things you can do  
15 for your fellow woman or man. In this instance that most  
16 critically important thing is to help Mr. Greebel put behind  
17 him what has been a nightmare of all nightmares and let his  
18 family and him get on with their lives in peace.

19           I'll leave you with this before I come back here  
20 tomorrow and you'll only have to hear from me for 15 or 20  
21 more minutes. But I'm a sucker for quotes, I really am. And  
22 it is said that: Do not let those gloat over me or my enemies  
23 without cause. Do not let those who hate me without reason  
24 maliciously look wink the eye. They do not speak peaceably,  
25 but devise false accusations against those who live quietly in

Summation - Mr. Dubin

10438

1 the land.

2 All Evan Greebel wanted to do was his job. He was a  
3 hard working, diligent professional. He never did anything  
4 unethical or illegal. He had no motive.

5 When we come back tomorrow, I'm going to talk to you  
6 briefly about the concept of reasonable doubt, presumption of  
7 innocence. And then I'm going to cede the floor to the rest  
8 of the evidence and Mr. Brodsky. I thank you so much today  
9 for your attention and I'll see you tomorrow.

10 THE COURT: All right, members of the jury, we are  
11 prepared to dismiss you at this time. Please don't talk about  
12 the case. Have a safe trip home. See you tomorrow morning  
13 9:00 and we will get started as soon as everybody is here.

14 Thank you for your attention and service.

15 (Jury exits the courtroom.)

16 THE COURT: All right, have a seat.

17 Is there anything we need to address before we  
18 adjourn for the evening?

19 So, Mr. Dubin, you are going to be speaking for 15  
20 more minutes and then Mr. Brodsky will take over.

21 MR. DUBIN: Yes, Your Honor.

22 THE COURT: And I trust it won't be repetition,  
23 correct?

24 MR. BRODSKY: Correct, Your Honor.

25 THE COURT: All right. It's rather unusual to have

INDEX

10439

1 two people do the closing, but I'm allowing it as long as  
2 there's no duplication.

3 All right, so we will see you all tomorrow morning,  
4 and have a good night.

5 MR. PITLUCK: Thank you.

6 MR. BRODSKY: Thank you.

7 \* \* \* \* \*

8 (Proceedings adjourned at 5:30 p.m. to resume on  
9 December 21, 2017 at 9:00 a.m.)  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14

15 I N D E X

17	Defense Exhibit Number 1010	10215
18	Defense Exhibit Number 8432	10215
19	Defense Exhibit Number 11,305	10215

20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25